

NWA-3100

802.11a/b/g Wireless Access Point

User's Guide

Version 3.60

10/2006

Edition 1



About This User's Guide

Intended Audience

This manual is intended for people who want to configure the ZyXEL Device using the web configurator. You should have at least a basic knowledge of TCP/IP networking concepts and topology.

Related Documentation

- Quick Start Guide
The Quick Start Guide is designed to help you get up and running right away. It contains information on setting up your network and configuring for Internet access.
- Supporting Disk
Refer to the included CD for support documents.
- ZyXEL Web Site
Please refer to www.zyxel.com for additional support documentation and product certifications.

User Guide Feedback

Help us help you. Send all User Guide-related comments, questions or suggestions for improvement to the following address, or use e-mail instead. Thank you!

The Technical Writing Team,
ZyXEL Communications Corp.,
6 Innovation Road II,
Science-Based Industrial Park,
Hsinchu, 300, Taiwan.

E-mail: techwriters@zyxel.com.tw

Document Conventions

Warnings and Notes

These are how warnings and notes are shown in this User's Guide.



Warnings tell you about things that could harm you or your device.



Notes tell you other important information (for example, other things you may need to configure or helpful tips) or recommendations.

Syntax Conventions

- The NWA-3100 may be referred to as the “ZyXEL Device”, the “device”, the “product” or the “system” in this User's Guide.
- Product labels, screen names, field labels and field choices are all in **bold** font.
- A key stroke is denoted by square brackets and uppercase text, for example, [ENTER] means the “enter” or “return” key on your keyboard.
- “Enter” means for you to type one or more characters and then press the [ENTER] key. “Select” or “choose” means for you to use one of the predefined choices.
- A right angle bracket (>) within a screen name denotes a mouse click. For example, **Maintenance > Log > Log Setting** means you first click **Maintenance** in the navigation panel, then the **Log** sub menu and finally the **Log Setting** tab to get to that screen.
- Units of measurement may denote the “metric” value or the “scientific” value. For example, “k” for kilo may denote “1000” or “1024”, “M” for mega may denote “1000000” or “1048576” and so on.
- “e.g.” is a shorthand for “for instance”, and “i.e.” means “that is” or “in other words”.

Icons Used in Figures

Figures in this User's Guide may use the following generic icons. The ZyXEL Device icon is not an exact representation of your device.

ZyXEL Device 	Computer 	Notebook computer 
Server 	DSLAM 	Firewall 
Telephone 	Switch 	Router 

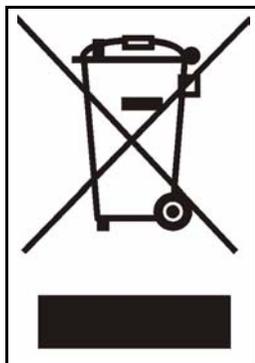
Safety Warnings



For your safety, be sure to read and follow all warning notices and instructions.

- Do NOT use this device near water, for example, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Do NOT expose your device to dampness, dust or corrosive liquids.
- Do NOT store things on the device.
- Do NOT install, use, or service this device during a thunderstorm. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Connect ONLY suitable accessories to the device.
- ONLY qualified service personnel should service or disassemble this device.
- Make sure to connect the cables to the correct ports.
- Place connecting cables carefully so that no one will step on them or stumble over them.
- Always disconnect all cables from this device before servicing or disassembling.
- Use ONLY an appropriate power adaptor or cord for your device.
- Connect the power adaptor or cord to the right supply voltage (for example, 110V AC in North America or 230V AC in Europe).
- Do NOT allow anything to rest on the power adaptor or cord and do NOT place the device where anyone can walk on the power adaptor or cord.
- Do NOT use the device if the power adaptor or cord is damaged as it might cause electrocution.
- If the power adaptor or cord is damaged, remove it from the power outlet.
- Do NOT attempt to repair the power adaptor or cord. Contact your local vendor to order a new one.
- Do not use the device outside, and make sure all the connections are indoors. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Antenna Warning! This device meets ETSI and FCC certification requirements when using the included antenna(s). Only use the included antenna(s).
- If you wall mount your device, make sure that no electrical lines, gas or water pipes will be damaged.
- The PoE (Power over Ethernet) devices that supply or receive power and their connected Ethernet cables must all be completely indoors.
- Fuse Warning! Replace a fuse only with a fuse of the same type and rating.

This product is recyclable. Dispose of it properly.



Contents Overview

Introduction	29
Introducing the ZyXEL Device	31
Introducing the Web Configurator	39
Tutorial	43
The Web Configurator	61
System Screens	63
Wireless Configuration	67
Wireless Security Configuration	81
MBSSID and SSID	97
Other Wireless Configuration	105
IP Screen	113
Rogue AP	117
Remote Management	123
Certificates	133
Log Screens	151
VLAN	157
Maintenance	175
SMT and Troubleshooting	185
Introducing the SMT	187
General Setup	191
LAN Setup	193
SNMP Configuration	195
System Password	197
System Information and Diagnosis	199
Firmware and Configuration File Maintenance	205
System Maintenance and Information	217
Troubleshooting	223
Appendices and Index	227

Table of Contents

About This User's Guide	3
Document Conventions.....	4
Safety Warnings.....	6
Contents Overview	9
Table of Contents.....	11
List of Figures	19
List of Tables.....	25
Part I: Introduction.....	29
Chapter 1	
Introducing the ZyXEL Device	31
1.1 Introducing the ZyXEL Device	31
1.2 Applications for the ZyXEL Device	31
1.2.1 Access Point	31
1.2.2 AP + Bridge	32
1.2.3 Bridge / Repeater	33
1.2.4 MBSSID	35
1.2.5 Pre-Configured SSID Profiles	36
1.3 Ways to Manage the ZyXEL Device	36
1.4 Good Habits for Managing the ZyXEL Device	36
1.5 LEDs	37
Chapter 2	
Introducing the Web Configurator	39
2.1 Accessing the Web Configurator	39
2.2 Resetting the ZyXEL Device	40
2.2.1 Methods of Restoring Factory-Defaults	41
2.3 Navigating the Web Configurator	41
Chapter 3	
Tutorial.....	43
3.1 How to Configure Multiple Wireless Networks	43

3.1.1 Change the Operating Mode	44
3.1.2 Configure the VoIP Network	46
3.1.2.1 Set Up Security for the VoIP Profile	47
3.1.2.2 Activate the VoIP Profile	49
3.1.3 Configure the Guest Network	49
3.1.3.1 Set Up Security for the Guest Profile	50
3.1.3.2 Set up Layer 2 Isolation	51
3.1.3.3 Activate the Guest Profile	51
3.1.4 Testing the Wireless Networks	52
3.2 How to Set Up and Use Rogue AP Detection	52
3.2.1 Set Up and Save a Friendly AP list	54
3.2.2 Activate Periodic Rogue AP Detection	56
3.2.3 Set Up E-mail Logs	57
3.2.4 Configure Your Other Access Points	58
3.2.5 Test the Setup	58

Part II: The Web Configurator 61

Chapter 4 System Screens 63

4.1 System Overview	63
4.2 Configuring General Setup	63
4.3 Configuring Password	64
4.4 Configuring Time Setting	65

Chapter 5 Wireless Configuration..... 67

5.1 Wireless LAN Overview	67
5.1.1 BSS	67
5.1.2 ESS	68
5.2 Wireless LAN Basics	68
5.3 Quality of Service	69
5.3.1 WMM QoS	69
5.3.1.1 WMM QoS Priorities	69
5.3.2 ATC	69
5.3.3 ATC+WMM	70
5.3.3.1 ATC+WMM from LAN to WLAN	70
5.3.3.2 ATC+WMM from WLAN to LAN	71
5.3.4 Type Of Service (ToS)	71
5.3.4.1 DiffServ	71
5.3.4.2 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior	71

5.3.5 ToS (Type of Service) and WMM QoS	72
5.4 Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)	72
5.4.1 Rapid STP	72
5.4.2 STP Terminology	73
5.4.3 How STP Works	73
5.4.4 STP Port States	73
5.5 Wireless Screen Overview	74
5.6 Configuring Wireless Settings	74
5.6.1 Access Point Mode	74
5.6.2 Bridge/Repeater Mode	76
5.6.3 AP+Bridge Mode	80
5.6.4 MBSSID Mode	80
Chapter 6	
Wireless Security Configuration	81
6.1 Wireless Security Overview	81
6.1.1 Encryption	81
6.1.2 Restricted Access	81
6.1.3 Hide Identity	81
6.1.4 WEP Encryption	81
6.2 802.1x Overview	82
6.3 EAP Authentication Overview	82
6.4 Introduction to WPA	82
6.4.1 User Authentication	83
6.4.2 Encryption	83
6.4.3 WPA(2)-PSK Application Example	84
6.5 WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example	84
6.6 Security Modes	85
6.7 Wireless Client WPA Supplicants	86
6.8 Wireless Security Effectiveness	86
6.9 Configuring Security	86
6.9.1 Security: WEP	87
6.9.2 Security: 802.1x Only	88
6.9.3 Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit	89
6.9.4 Security: WPA	91
6.9.5 Security: WPA2 or WPA2-MIX	92
6.9.6 Security: WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK, WPA2-PSK-MIX	93
6.10 Introduction to RADIUS	95
6.11 Configuring RADIUS	95
Chapter 7	
MBSSID and SSID	97
7.1 Wireless LAN Infrastructures	97

7.1.1 MBSSID	97
7.1.2 Notes on Multiple BSS	97
7.1.3 Multiple BSS Example	97
7.1.4 Multiple BSS with VLAN Example	97
7.1.5 Configuring Multiple BSSs	98
7.2 SSID	100
7.2.1 The SSID Screen	100
7.2.2 Configuring SSID	101
Chapter 8	
Other Wireless Configuration	105
8.1 Layer-2 Isolation Introduction	105
8.2 Configuring Layer-2 Isolation	106
8.2.1 Layer-2 Isolation Examples	107
8.2.1.1 Layer-2 Isolation Example 1	108
8.2.1.2 Layer-2 Isolation Example 2	108
8.3 Configuring MAC Filter	109
8.4 Configuring Roaming	111
8.4.1 Requirements for Roaming	112
Chapter 9	
IP Screen.....	113
9.1 Factory Ethernet Defaults	113
9.2 TCP/IP Parameters	113
9.2.1 WAN IP Address Assignment	113
9.3 Configuring IP	114
Chapter 10	
Rogue AP.....	117
10.1 Rogue AP Introduction	117
10.2 Rogue AP Examples	117
10.2.1 “Honey-pot” Attack	118
10.3 Configuring Rogue AP Detection	119
10.3.1 Rogue AP: Configuration	119
10.3.2 Rogue AP: Friendly AP	120
10.3.3 Rogue AP List	121
Chapter 11	
Remote Management.....	123
11.1 Remote Management Overview	123
11.1.1 Remote Management Limitations	124
11.1.2 System Timeout	124
11.2 SSH	124

11.3 Telnet	124
11.4 Configuring FTP	125
11.5 Configuring WWW	126
11.6 SNMP	128
11.6.1 Supported MIBs	129
11.6.2 SNMP Traps	129
11.7 SNMP Traps	130
11.7.1 Configuring SNMP	130
Chapter 12	
Certificates	133
12.1 Certificates Overview	133
12.1.1 Advantages of Certificates	134
12.2 Self-signed Certificates	134
12.3 Verifying a Certificate	134
12.3.1 Checking the Fingerprint of a Certificate on Your Computer	134
12.4 Configuration Summary	135
12.5 My Certificates	135
12.6 Certificate File Formats	137
12.7 Importing a Certificate	138
12.8 Creating a Certificate	139
12.9 My Certificate Details	141
12.10 Trusted CAs	144
12.11 Importing a Trusted CA's Certificate	145
12.12 Trusted CA Certificate Details	146
Chapter 13	
Log Screens	151
13.1 Configuring View Log	151
13.2 Configuring Log Settings	152
13.3 Example Log Messages	154
13.4 Log Commands	155
13.4.1 Configuring What You Want the ZyXEL Device to Log	155
13.4.2 Displaying Logs	156
13.5 Log Command Example	156
Chapter 14	
VLAN	157
14.1 VLAN	157
14.1.1 Management VLAN ID	157
14.1.2 VLAN Tagging	157
14.2 Configuring VLAN	158
14.2.1 Wireless VLAN	158

14.2.2 RADIUS VLAN	160
14.2.3 Configuring Management VLAN Example	161
14.2.4 Configuring Microsoft's IAS Server Example	164
14.2.4.1 Configuring VLAN Groups	164
14.2.4.2 Configuring Remote Access Policies	165
14.2.5 Second Rx VLAN ID Example	172
14.2.5.1 Second Rx VLAN Setup Example	172
Chapter 15	
Maintenance	175
15.1 Maintenance Overview	175
15.2 System Status Screen	175
15.2.1 System Statistics	176
15.3 Association List	177
15.4 Channel Usage	178
15.5 F/W Upload Screen	178
15.6 Configuration Screen	180
15.6.1 Backup Configuration	181
15.6.2 Restore Configuration	181
15.6.3 Back to Factory Defaults	182
15.7 Restart Screen	183
Part III: SMT and Troubleshooting.....	185
Chapter 16	
Introducing the SMT	187
16.1 Connect to your ZyXEL Device Using Telnet	187
16.2 Changing the System Password	187
16.3 SMT Menu Overview Example	188
16.4 Navigating the SMT Interface	188
16.4.1 System Management Terminal Interface Summary	190
Chapter 17	
General Setup.....	191
17.1 General Setup	191
17.1.1 Procedure To Configure Menu 1	191
Chapter 18	
LAN Setup.....	193
18.1 LAN Setup	193
18.2 TCP/IP Ethernet Setup	193

Chapter 19	
SNMP Configuration	195
19.1 SNMP Configuration	195
Chapter 20	
System Password	197
20.1 System Password	197
Chapter 21	
System Information and Diagnosis	199
21.1 System Status	199
21.2 System Information	200
21.2.1 System Information	201
21.2.2 Console Port Speed	202
21.3 Log and Trace	202
21.3.1 Viewing Error Log	202
21.4 Diagnostic	203
Chapter 22	
Firmware and Configuration File Maintenance	205
22.1 Filename Conventions	205
22.2 Backup Configuration	206
22.2.1 Backup Configuration Using FTP	206
22.2.2 Using the FTP command from the DOS Prompt	207
22.2.3 Backup Configuration Using TFTP	207
22.2.4 Example: TFTP Command	208
22.2.5 Backup Via Console Port	209
22.3 Restore Configuration	210
22.3.1 Restore Using FTP	210
22.4 Uploading Firmware and Configuration Files	210
22.4.1 Firmware Upload	211
22.4.2 Configuration File Upload	211
22.4.3 Using the FTP command from the DOS Prompt Example	212
22.4.4 TFTP File Upload	213
22.4.5 Example: TFTP Command	213
22.4.6 Uploading Via Console Port	213
22.4.7 Uploading Firmware File Via Console Port	214
22.4.8 Example Xmodem Firmware Upload Using HyperTerminal	214
22.4.9 Uploading Configuration File Via Console Port	215
22.4.10 Example Xmodem Configuration Upload Using HyperTerminal	215
Chapter 23	
System Maintenance and Information	217

23.1 Command Interpreter Mode	217
23.1.1 Command Syntax	218
23.1.2 Command Usage	218
23.1.3 Brute-Force Password Guessing Protection	218
23.1.3.1 Configuring Brute-Force Password Guessing Protection: Example	218
23.2 Time and Date Setting	219
23.2.1 Resetting the Time	220
23.3 Remote Management Setup	220
23.3.1 Telnet	220
23.3.2 FTP	220
23.3.3 Web	220
23.3.4 Remote Management Setup	220
23.3.5 Remote Management Limitations	222
23.4 System Timeout	222
Chapter 24	
Troubleshooting.....	223
24.1 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs	223
24.2 ZyXEL Device Access and Login	223
24.3 Internet Access	225
Part IV: Appendices and Index	227
Appendix A Product Specifications.....	229
Appendix B Setting up Your Computer's IP Address.....	233
Appendix C IP Address Assignment Conflicts.....	245
Appendix D Wireless LANs	249
Appendix E Indoor Installation Recommendations.....	259
Appendix F Pop-up Windows, JavaScripts and Java Permissions	261
Appendix G IP Addresses and Subnetting	267
Appendix H Text File Based Auto Configuration	275
Appendix I Legal Information.....	283
Appendix J Customer Support	287
Index.....	291

List of Figures

Figure 1 Access Point Application	32
Figure 2 AP+Bridge Application	33
Figure 3 Bridge Application	34
Figure 4 Repeater Application	34
Figure 5 Multiple BSSs	35
Figure 6 LEDs	37
Figure 7 Change Password Screen	40
Figure 8 Replace Certificate Screen	40
Figure 9 The MAIN MENU Screen of the Web Configurator	41
Figure 10 Tutorial: Example MBSSID Setup	44
Figure 11 Tutorial: Wireless LAN: Before	45
Figure 12 Tutorial: Wireless LAN: Change Mode	45
Figure 13 Tutorial: WIRELESS > SSID	46
Figure 14 Tutorial: VoIP SSID Profile Edit	47
Figure 15 Tutorial: VoIP Security	48
Figure 16 Tutorial: VoIP Security Profile Edit	48
Figure 17 Tutorial: VoIP Security: Updated	49
Figure 18 Tutorial: Activate VoIP Profile	49
Figure 19 Tutorial: Guest Edit	50
Figure 20 Tutorial: Guest Security Profile Edit	50
Figure 21 Tutorial: Guest Security: Updated	51
Figure 22 Tutorial: Layer 2 Isolation	51
Figure 23 Tutorial: Activate Guest Profile	52
Figure 24 Tutorial: Wireless Network Example	53
Figure 25 Tutorial: Friendly AP (Before Data Entry)	54
Figure 26 Tutorial: Friendly AP (After Data Entry)	55
Figure 27 Tutorial: Configuration	55
Figure 28 Tutorial: Warning	56
Figure 29 Tutorial: Save Friendly AP list	56
Figure 30 Tutorial: Periodic Rogue AP Detection	56
Figure 31 Tutorial: Log Settings	57
Figure 32 System General Setup	63
Figure 33 Password.	64
Figure 34 Time Setting	65
Figure 35 Basic Service set	67
Figure 36 Extended Service Set	68
Figure 37 DiffServ: Differentiated Service Field	72
Figure 38 Wireless: Access Point	75

Figure 39 Bridging Example	77
Figure 40 Bridge Loop: Two Bridges Connected to Hub	77
Figure 41 Bridge Loop: Bridge Connected to Wired LAN	78
Figure 42 Wireless: Bridge/Repeater	78
Figure 43 Wireless: AP+Bridge	80
Figure 44 EAP Authentication	82
Figure 45 WPA(2)-PSK Authentication	84
Figure 46 WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example	85
Figure 47 Security	87
Figure 48 Security: WEP	88
Figure 49 Security: 802.1x Only	89
Figure 50 Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit	90
Figure 51 Security: WPA	91
Figure 52 Security:WPA2 or WPA2-MIX	92
Figure 53 Security: WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK or WPA2-PSK-MIX	94
Figure 54 RADIUS	95
Figure 55 Multiple BSS with VLAN Example	98
Figure 56 Wireless: Multiple BSS	98
Figure 57 SSID	101
Figure 58 Configuring SSID	102
Figure 59 Layer-2 Isolation Application	106
Figure 60 Layer-2 Isolation Configuration Screen	107
Figure 61 Layer-2 Isolation Example	108
Figure 62 Layer-2 Isolation Example 1	108
Figure 63 Layer-2 Isolation Example 2	109
Figure 64 MAC Address Filter	110
Figure 65 Roaming Example	111
Figure 66 Roaming	112
Figure 67 IP Setup	114
Figure 68 Rogue AP: Example	118
Figure 69 “Honey-pot” Attack	119
Figure 70 ROGUE AP > Configuration	120
Figure 71 ROGUE AP > Friendly AP	121
Figure 72 ROGUE AP > Rogue AP	122
Figure 73 Secure and Insecure Remote Management	123
Figure 74 SSH Communication Example	124
Figure 75 Remote Management: Telnet	125
Figure 76 Remote Management: FTP	126
Figure 77 Remote Management: WWW	127
Figure 78 SNMP Management Model	128
Figure 79 Remote Management: SNMP	131
Figure 80 Certificates on Your Computer	134
Figure 81 Certificate Details	135

Figure 82 My Certificates	136
Figure 83 My Certificate Import	138
Figure 84 My Certificate Create	139
Figure 85 My Certificate Details	142
Figure 86 Trusted CAs	144
Figure 87 Trusted CA Import	146
Figure 88 Trusted CA Details	147
Figure 89 View Log	151
Figure 90 Log Settings	152
Figure 91 WIRELESS VLAN	159
Figure 92 RADIUS VLAN	160
Figure 93 Management VLAN Configuration Example	162
Figure 94 VLAN-Aware Switch - Static VLAN	162
Figure 95 VLAN-Aware Switch	162
Figure 96 VLAN-Aware Switch - VLAN Status	163
Figure 97 VLAN Setup	163
Figure 98 New Global Security Group	165
Figure 99 Add Group Members	165
Figure 100 New Remote Access Policy for VLAN Group	166
Figure 101 Specifying Windows-Group Condition	166
Figure 102 Adding VLAN Group	167
Figure 103 Granting Permissions and User Profile Screens	167
Figure 104 Authentication Tab Settings	168
Figure 105 Encryption Tab Settings	168
Figure 106 Connection Attributes Screen	169
Figure 107 RADIUS Attribute Screen	169
Figure 108 802 Attribute Setting for Tunnel-Medium-Type	170
Figure 109 VLAN ID Attribute Setting for Tunnel-Pvt-Group-ID	170
Figure 110 VLAN Attribute Setting for Tunnel-Type	171
Figure 111 Completed Advanced Tab	171
Figure 112 Second Rx VLAN ID Example	172
Figure 113 Configuring SSID: Second Rx VLAN ID Example	173
Figure 114 System Status	175
Figure 115 System Status: Show Statistics	176
Figure 116 Association List	177
Figure 117 Channel Usage	178
Figure 118 Firmware Upload	179
Figure 119 Firmware Upload In Process	179
Figure 120 Network Temporarily Disconnected	180
Figure 121 Firmware Upload Error	180
Figure 122 Configuration	181
Figure 123 Configuration Upload Successful	182
Figure 124 Network Temporarily Disconnected	182

Figure 125 Configuration Upload Error	182
Figure 126 Reset Warning Message	183
Figure 127 Restart Screen	183
Figure 128 Login Screen	187
Figure 129 Menu 23 System Password	187
Figure 130 SMT Main Menu	189
Figure 131 Menu 1 General Setup	191
Figure 132 Menu 3 LAN Setup	193
Figure 133 Menu 3.2 TCP/IP Setup	193
Figure 134 Menu 22 SNMP Configuration	195
Figure 135 Menu 23 System Password	197
Figure 136 Menu 24 System Maintenance	199
Figure 137 Menu 24.1 System Maintenance: Status	200
Figure 138 Menu 24.2 System Information and Console Port Speed	201
Figure 139 Menu 24.2.1 System Information: Information	201
Figure 140 Menu 24.2.2 System Maintenance: Change Console Port Speed	202
Figure 141 Menu 24.3 System Maintenance: Log and Trace	203
Figure 142 Sample Error and Information Messages	203
Figure 143 Menu 24.4 System Maintenance: Diagnostic	203
Figure 144 Menu 24.5 Backup Configuration	206
Figure 145 FTP Session Example	207
Figure 146 System Maintenance: Backup Configuration	209
Figure 147 System Maintenance: Starting Xmodem Download Screen	209
Figure 148 Backup Configuration Example	209
Figure 149 Successful Backup Confirmation Screen	209
Figure 150 Menu 24.6 Restore Configuration	210
Figure 151 Menu 24.7 System Maintenance: Upload Firmware	211
Figure 152 Menu 24.7.1 System Maintenance: Upload System Firmware	211
Figure 153 Menu 24.7.2 System Maintenance: Upload System Configuration File	212
Figure 154 FTP Session Example	212
Figure 155 Menu 24.7.1 as seen using the Console Port	214
Figure 156 Example Xmodem Upload	214
Figure 157 Menu 24.7.2 as seen using the Console Port	215
Figure 158 Example Xmodem Upload	215
Figure 159 Menu 24 System Maintenance	217
Figure 160 Valid CI Commands	218
Figure 161 Menu 24.10 System Maintenance: Time and Date Setting	219
Figure 162 Menu 24.11 Remote Management Control	221
Figure 163 Windows 95/98/Me: Network: Configuration	234
Figure 164 Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: IP Address	235
Figure 165 Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: DNS Configuration	236
Figure 166 Windows XP: Start Menu	237
Figure 167 Windows XP: Control Panel	237

Figure 168 Windows XP: Control Panel: Network Connections: Properties	238
Figure 169 Windows XP: Local Area Connection Properties	238
Figure 170 Windows XP: Advanced TCP/IP Settings	239
Figure 171 Windows XP: Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties	240
Figure 172 Macintosh OS 8/9: Apple Menu	241
Figure 173 Macintosh OS 8/9: TCP/IP	241
Figure 174 Macintosh OS X: Apple Menu	242
Figure 175 Macintosh OS X: Network	243
Figure 176 IP Address Conflicts: Case A	245
Figure 177 IP Address Conflicts: Case B	246
Figure 178 IP Address Conflicts: Case C	246
Figure 179 IP Address Conflicts: Case D	247
Figure 180 Peer-to-Peer Communication in an Ad-hoc Network	249
Figure 181 Basic Service Set	250
Figure 182 Infrastructure WLAN	251
Figure 183 RTS/CTS	252
Figure 184 Pop-up Blocker	261
Figure 185 Internet Options: Privacy	262
Figure 186 Internet Options: Privacy	263
Figure 187 Pop-up Blocker Settings	263
Figure 188 Internet Options: Security	264
Figure 189 Security Settings - Java Scripting	265
Figure 190 Security Settings - Java	265
Figure 191 Java (Sun)	266
Figure 192 Network Number and Host ID	268
Figure 193 Subnetting Example: Before Subnetting	270
Figure 194 Subnetting Example: After Subnetting	271
Figure 195 Text File Based Auto Configuration	275
Figure 196 Configuration File Format	277
Figure 197 WEP Configuration File Example	278
Figure 198 802.1X Configuration File Example	279
Figure 199 WPA-PSK Configuration File Example	279
Figure 200 WPA Configuration File Example	280
Figure 201 wlan Configuration File Example	281

List of Tables

Table 1 LEDs	37
Table 2 Tutorial: Example Information	44
Table 3 Tutorial: Rogue AP Example Information	53
Table 4 Tutorial: Friendly AP Information	54
Table 5 System General Setup	63
Table 6 Password	64
Table 7 Time Setting	65
Table 8 WMM QoS Priorities	69
Table 9 Typical Packet Sizes	70
Table 10 Automatic Traffic Classifier Priorities	70
Table 11 ATC + WMM Priority Assignment (LAN to WLAN)	71
Table 12 ATC + WMM Priority Assignment (WLAN to LAN)	71
Table 13 ToS and IEEE 802.1d to WMM QoS Priority Level Mapping	72
Table 14 STP Path Costs	73
Table 15 STP Port States	73
Table 16 Wireless: Access Point	75
Table 17 Wireless: Bridge/Repeater	79
Table 18 Security Modes	85
Table 19 Wireless Security Levels	86
Table 20 Security	87
Table 21 Security: WEP	88
Table 22 Security: 802.1x Only	89
Table 23 Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit	90
Table 24 Security: WPA	91
Table 25 Security: WPA2 or WPA2-MIX	92
Table 26 Security: WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK or WPA2-PSK-MIX	94
Table 27 RADIUS	95
Table 28 Wireless: Multiple BSS	99
Table 29 SSID	101
Table 30 Configuring SSID	102
Table 31 Layer-2 Isolation Configuration	107
Table 32 MAC Address Filter	110
Table 33 Private IP Address Ranges	113
Table 34 IP Setup	114
Table 35 ROGUE AP > Configuration	120
Table 36 ROGUE AP > Friendly AP	121
Table 37 ROGUE AP > Rogue AP	122
Table 38 Remote Management Overview	123

Table 39 Remote Management: Telnet	125
Table 40 Remote Management: FTP	126
Table 41 Remote Management: WWW	127
Table 42 SNMP Traps	129
Table 43 SNMP Interface Index to Physical Port Mapping	130
Table 44 Remote Management: SNMP	131
Table 45 My Certificates	136
Table 46 My Certificate Import	138
Table 47 My Certificate Create	139
Table 48 My Certificate Details	142
Table 49 Trusted CAs	145
Table 50 Trusted CA Import	146
Table 51 Trusted CA Details	147
Table 52 View Log	151
Table 53 Log Settings	153
Table 54 System Maintenance Logs	154
Table 55 ICMP Notes	154
Table 56 Sys log	155
Table 57 Log Categories and Available Settings	155
Table 58 WIRELESS VLAN	159
Table 59 RADIUS VLAN	161
Table 60 Standard RADIUS Attributes	164
Table 61 System Status	175
Table 62 System Status: Show Statistics	176
Table 63 Association List	177
Table 64 Channel Usage	178
Table 65 Firmware Upload	179
Table 66 Restore Configuration	181
Table 67 SMT Menus Overview	188
Table 68 Main Menu Commands	189
Table 69 Main Menu Summary	190
Table 70 Menu 1 General Setup	191
Table 71 Menu 3.2 TCP/IP Setup	194
Table 72 Menu 22 SNMP Configuration	195
Table 73 Menu 24.1 System Maintenance: Status	200
Table 74 Menu 24.2.1 System Maintenance: Information	201
Table 75 Menu 24.4 System Maintenance Menu: Diagnostic	204
Table 76 Filename Conventions	206
Table 77 General Commands for Third Party FTP Clients	207
Table 78 General Commands for Third Party TFTP Clients	208
Table 79 Brute-Force Password Guessing Protection Commands	218
Table 80 System Maintenance: Time and Date Setting	219
Table 81 Menu 24.11 Remote Management Control	221

Table 82 Hardware Specifications	229
Table 83 Firmware Specifications	229
Table 84 Power over Ethernet Injector Specifications	230
Table 85 Power over Ethernet Injector RJ-45 Port Pin Assignments	231
Table 86 North American Plug Standards	231
Table 87 European Plug Standards	231
Table 88 United Kingdom Plug Standards	231
Table 89 Australia and New Zealand Plug Standards	231
Table 90 Comparison of EAP Authentication Types	256
Table 91 Wireless Security Relational Matrix	257
Table 92 Subnet Masks	268
Table 93 Subnet Masks	269
Table 94 Maximum Host Numbers	269
Table 95 Alternative Subnet Mask Notation	269
Table 96 Subnet 1	271
Table 97 Subnet 2	272
Table 98 Subnet 3	272
Table 99 Subnet 4	272
Table 100 Eight Subnets	272
Table 101 24-bit Network Number Subnet Planning	273
Table 102 16-bit Network Number Subnet Planning	273
Table 103 Auto Configuration by DHCP	276
Table 104 Manual Configuration	276
Table 105 Configuration via SNMP	276
Table 106 Displaying the File Version	277
Table 107 Displaying the File Version	277
Table 108 Displaying the Auto Configuration Status	278

PART I

Introduction

Introducing the ZyXEL Device (31)
Introducing the Web Configurator (39)
Tutorial (43)

Introducing the ZyXEL Device

This chapter introduces the main applications and features of the ZyXEL Device. It also introduces the ways you can manage the ZyXEL Device.

1.1 Introducing the ZyXEL Device

Your ZyXEL Device extends the range of your existing wired network without additional wiring, providing easy network access to mobile users.

It is highly versatile, supporting up to eight BSSIDs simultaneously. The Quality of Service (QoS) features allow you to prioritize time-sensitive or highly important applications such as VoIP.

Multiple security profiles allow you to easily assign different types of security to groups of users. The ZyXEL Device controls network access with MAC address filtering, rogue AP detection and layer 2 isolation. It also provides a high level of network traffic security, supporting IEEE 802.1x, Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA), WPA2 and WEP data encryption.

Your ZyXEL Device is easy to install, configure and use. The embedded Web-based configurator enables simple, straightforward management and maintenance.

See the Quick Start Guide for instructions on how to make hardware connections.

1.2 Applications for the ZyXEL Device

The ZyXEL Device can be configured to use the following WLAN operating modes

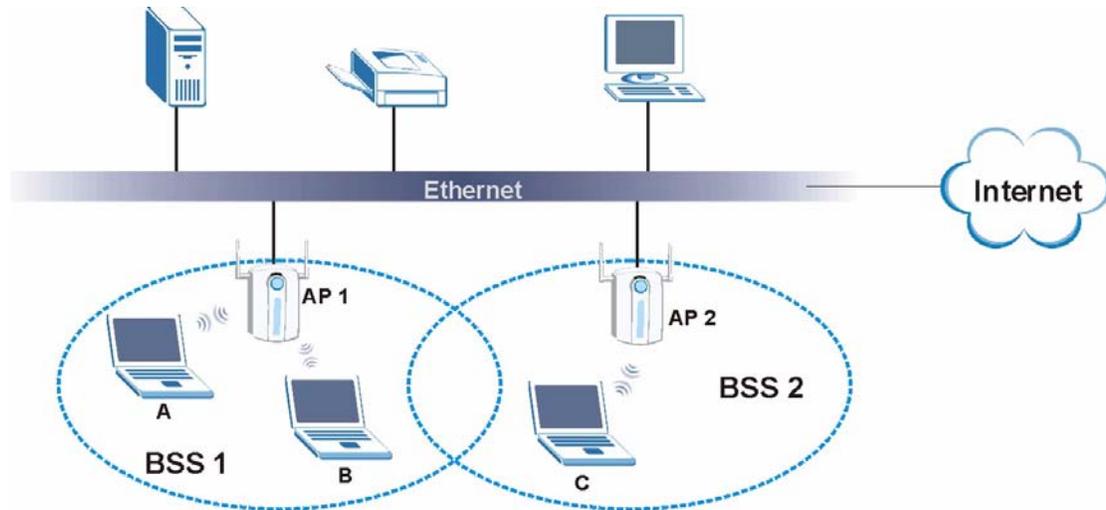
- 1 AP
- 2 AP+Bridge
- 3 Bridge/Repeater
- 4 MBSSID

Applications for each operating mode are shown below.

1.2.1 Access Point

The ZyXEL Device is an ideal access solution for wireless Internet connection. A typical Internet access application for your ZyXEL Device is shown as follows. Stations A, B and C can access the wired network through the ZyXEL Devices.

Figure 1 Access Point Application



1.2.2 AP + Bridge

In **AP+Bridge** mode, the ZyXEL Device supports both AP and bridge connection at the same time.

In the figure below, **A** and **B** use **X** as an **AP** to access the wired network, while **X** and **Y** communicate in bridge mode.

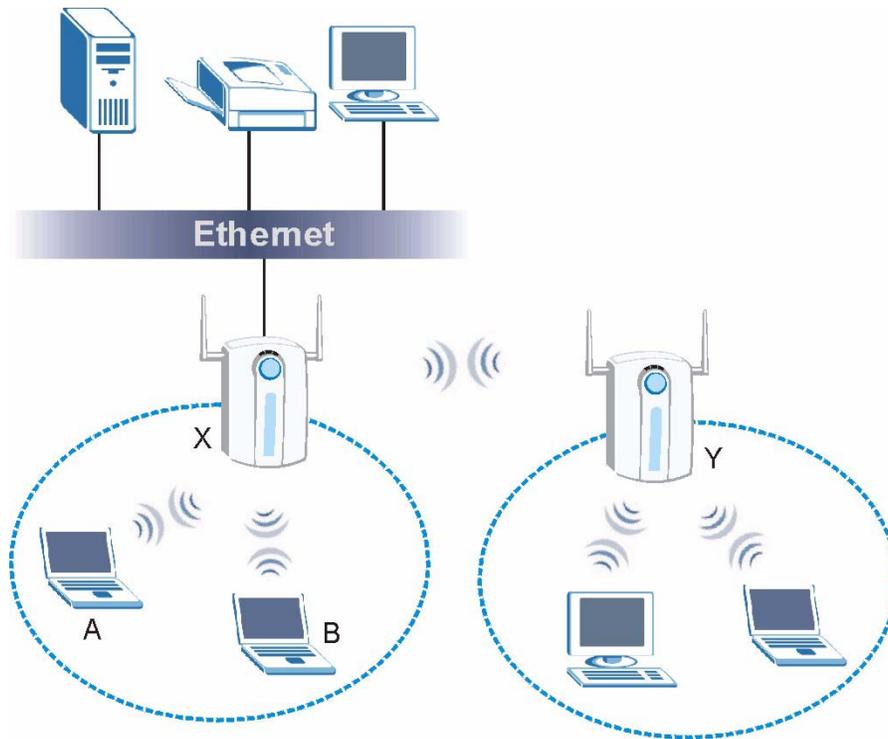
When the ZyXEL Device is in **AP + Bridge** mode, security between APs (the Wireless Distribution System or WDS) is independent of the security between the wireless stations and the AP. See [Section 5.6.2 on page 76](#) for more details.

Unless specified, the term “security settings” refers to the traffic between the wireless stations and the ZyXEL Device.



If you do not enable WDS security in AP + Bridge mode, traffic between APs is not encrypted.

Figure 2 AP+Bridge Application



1.2.3 Bridge / Repeater

The ZyXEL Device can act as a wireless network bridge and establish wireless links with other APs. In the figure below, the two ZyXEL Devices (**A** and **B**) are connected to independent wired networks and have a bridge connection (**A** can communicate with **B**) at the same time. A ZyXEL Device in repeater mode (**C**) has no Ethernet connection. When the ZyXEL Device is in bridge mode, you should enable STP to prevent bridge loops.

When the ZyXEL Device is in **Bridge / Repeater** mode, security between APs (the Wireless Distribution System or WDS) is independent of the security between the wireless stations and the AP. When WDS security is enabled, both APs must use the same pre-shared key. See [Section 5.6.2 on page 76](#) for more details.

Once the security settings of the two APs match one another, the WDS connection is made.



If you do not enable WDS security in Bridge / Repeater mode, traffic between APs is not encrypted.

Figure 3 Bridge Application

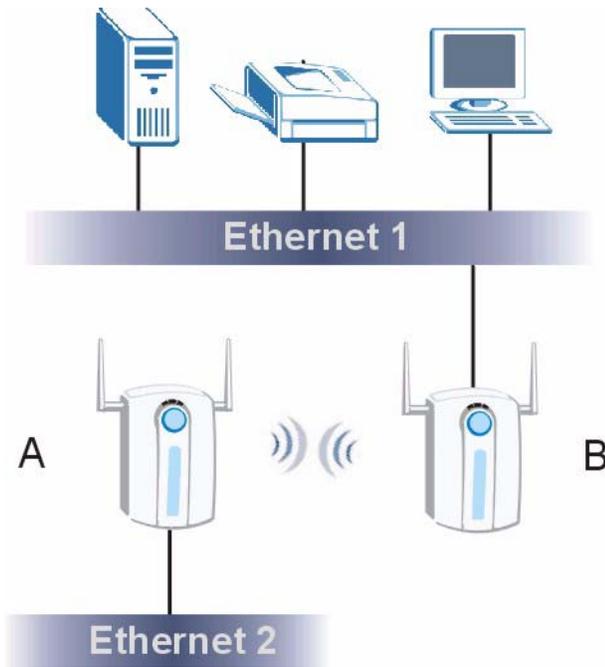
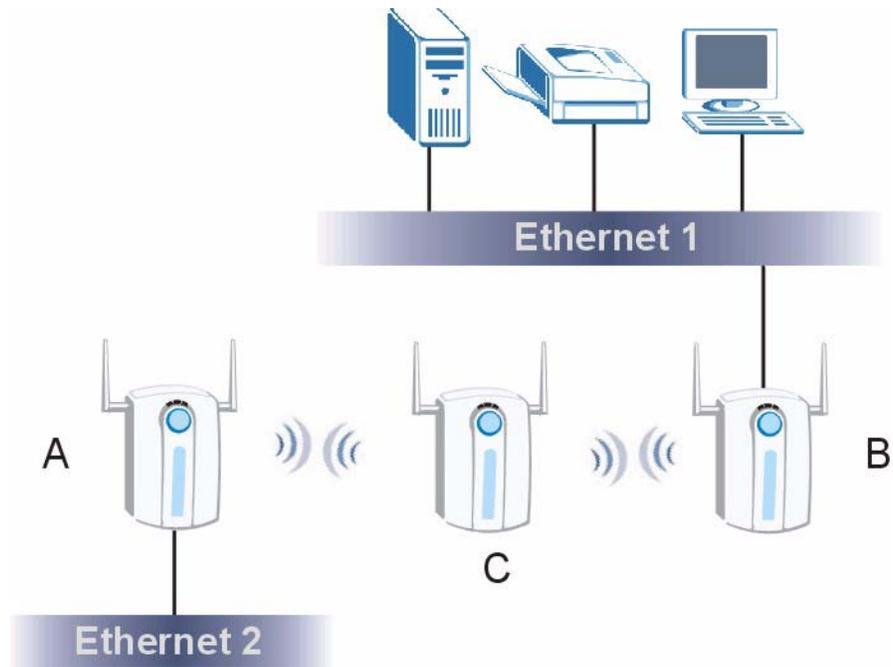


Figure 4 Repeater Application



1.2.4 MBSSID

A BSS (Basic Service Set) is the set of devices forming a single wireless network (usually an access point and one or more wireless clients). An SSID (Service Set Identifier) is the name of a BSS. In MBSSID (Multiple BSS) mode, the ZyXEL Device provides multiple virtual APs, each forming its own BSS and using its own individual SSID profile.

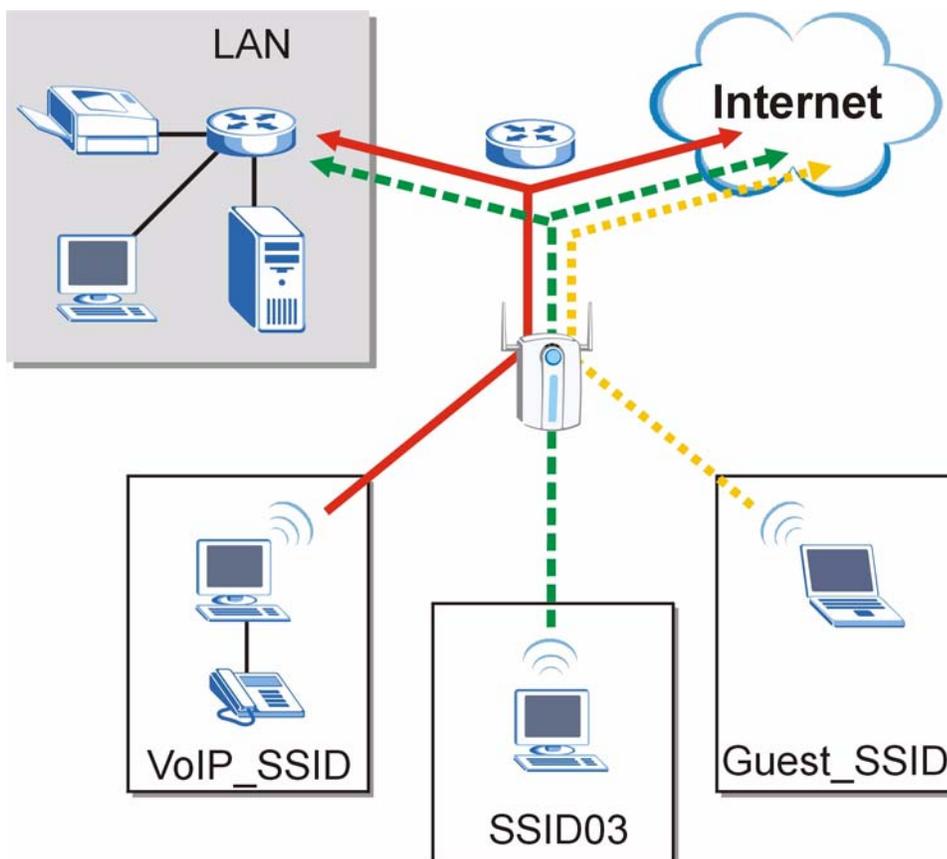
You can configure up to sixteen SSID profiles, and have up to eight active at any one time.

You can assign different wireless and security settings to each SSID profile. This allows you to compartmentalize groups of users, set varying access privileges, and prioritize network traffic to and from certain BSSs.

To the wireless clients in the network, each SSID appears to be a different access point. As in any wireless network, clients can associate only with the SSIDs for which they have the correct security settings.

For example, you might want to set up a wireless network in your office where Internet telephony (Voice over IP, or VoIP) users have priority. You also want a regular wireless network for standard users, as well as a 'guest' wireless network for visitors. In the following figure, **VoIP_SSID** users have Quality of Service (QoS) priority, **SSID03** is the wireless network for standard users, and **Guest_SSID** is the wireless network for guest users. In this example, the guest user is forbidden access to the wired LAN behind the AP and can access only the Internet.

Figure 5 Multiple BSSs



1.2.5 Pre-Configured SSID Profiles

The ZyXEL Device has two pre-configured SSID profiles.

- 1 **VoIP_SSID.** This profile is intended for use by wireless clients requiring the highest QoS (Quality of Service) level for VoIP (Voice over IP) telephony and other applications requiring low latency. The QoS level of this profile is not user-configurable. See [Section 5.3.1 on page 69](#) for more information on QoS.
- 2 **Guest_SSID.** This profile is intended for use by visitors and others who require access to certain resources on the network (an Internet gateway or a network printer, for example) but must not have access to the rest of the network. Layer 2 isolation is enabled (see [Section 8.1 on page 105](#)), and QoS is set to **NONE**. Intra-BSS traffic blocking is also enabled (see [Section 5.1.1 on page 67](#)). These fields are all user-configurable.

1.3 Ways to Manage the ZyXEL Device

Use any of the following methods to manage the ZyXEL Device.

- Web Configurator. This is recommended for everyday management of the ZyXEL Device using a (supported) web browser.
- Command Line Interface. Line commands are mostly used for troubleshooting by service engineers.
- SMT. System Management Terminal is a text-based configuration menu that you can use to configure your device. Use Telnet to access the SMT.
- FTP for firmware upgrades and configuration backup and restore.
- SNMP. The device can be monitored by an SNMP manager. See the SNMP chapter in this User's Guide.

1.4 Good Habits for Managing the ZyXEL Device

Do the following things regularly to make the ZyXEL Device more secure and to manage it more effectively.

- Change the password often. Use a password that's not easy to guess and that consists of different types of characters, such as numbers and letters.
- Write down the password and put it in a safe place.
- Back up the configuration (and make sure you know how to restore it). Restoring an earlier working configuration may be useful if the device becomes unstable or even crashes. If you forget your password, you will have to reset the ZyXEL Device to its factory default settings. If you backed up an earlier configuration file, you won't have to totally re-configure the ZyXEL Device; you can simply restore your last configuration.

1.5 LEDs

Figure 6 LEDs



Table 1 LEDs

LABEL	LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
1	SYS	Green	On	The ZyXEL Device is in AP+Bridge or Bridge/Repeater mode, and has successfully established a Wireless Distribution System (WDS) connection.
		Red	Flashing	The ZyXEL Device is starting up.
			Off	Either <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The ZyXEL Device is in Access Point or MBSSID mode and is functioning normally. • The ZyXEL Device is in AP+Bridge or Bridge/Repeater mode and has not established a Wireless Distribution System (WDS) connection. or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The ZyXEL Device is not receiving power.

Table 1 LEDs (continued)

LABEL	LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
2	ZyAIR	Blue	On	The ZyXEL Device is receiving power. You can turn the ZyAIR LED off and on using the Web configurator. See Section 5.6.1 on page 74 .
			Blinking	The ZyXEL Device is receiving power and transmitting data to or receiving data from its wireless stations.
			Off	Either <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The ZyXEL Device is not receiving power. or • The ZyAIR LED has been disabled. See Section 5.6.1 on page 74 for how to enable the ZyAIR LED.
3	ETHN	Green	On	The ZyXEL Device has a 10 Mbps Ethernet connection.
			Blinking	The ZyXEL Device has a 10 Mbps Ethernet connection and is sending or receiving data.
		Yellow	On	The ZyXEL Device has a 100 Mbps Ethernet connection.
			Blinking	The ZyXEL Device has a 100 Mbps Ethernet connection and is sending/receiving data.
			Off	The ZyXEL Device does not have an Ethernet connection.
4	POWER	Green	On	The ZyXEL Device is receiving power via the POWER socket.
		Red	On	The ZyXEL Device is receiving power via the ETHERNET port using Power over Ethernet (PoE).
			Off	The ZyXEL Device is not receiving power.

Introducing the Web Configurator

This chapter describes how to access the ZyXEL Device's web configurator and provides an overview of its screens.

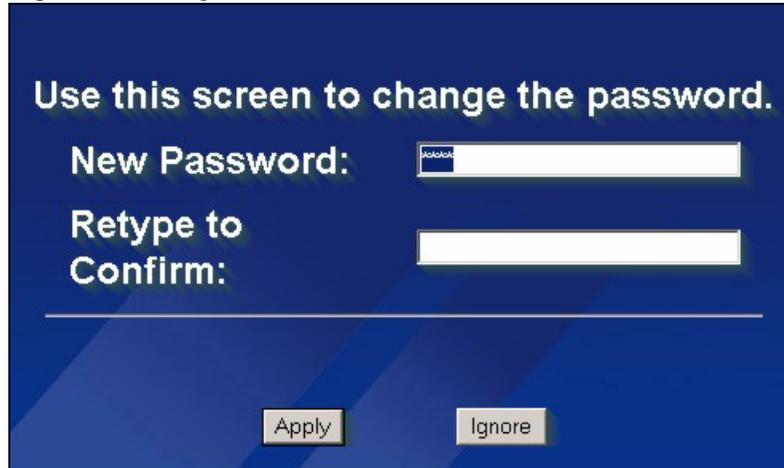
2.1 Accessing the Web Configurator

- 1 Make sure your hardware is properly connected and prepare your computer or computer network to connect to the ZyXEL Device (refer to the Quick Start Guide).
- 2 Launch your web browser.
- 3 Type "192.168.1.2" as the URL (default).
- 4 Type "1234" (default) as the password and click **Login**. In some versions, the default password appears automatically - if this is the case, click **Login**.
- 5 You should see a screen asking you to change your password (highly recommended) as shown next. Type a new password (and retype it to confirm) then click **Apply**. Alternatively, click **Ignore**.



If you do not change the password, the following screen appears every time you login.

Figure 7 Change Password Screen



- 6 Click **Apply** in the **Replace Certificate** screen to create a certificate using your ZyXEL Device's MAC address that will be specific to this device.

Figure 8 Replace Certificate Screen



You should now see the **MAIN MENU** screen.



The management session automatically times out when the time period set in the Administrator Inactivity Timer field expires (default five minutes). Simply log back into the ZyXEL Device if this happens.

2.2 Resetting the ZyXEL Device

If you forget your password or cannot access the web configurator, you will need to use the **RESET** button. This replaces the current configuration file with the factory-default configuration file. This means that you will lose all the settings you previously configured. The password will be reset to 1234.

2.2.1 Methods of Restoring Factory-Defaults

You can erase the current configuration and restore factory defaults in three ways:

Use the **RESET** button to upload the default configuration file. Hold this button in for about 10 seconds (the lights will begin to blink). Use this method for cases when the password or IP address of the ZyXEL Device is not known.

Use the web configurator to restore defaults (refer to [Chapter 15 on page 175](#)).

Transfer the configuration file to your ZyXEL Device using FTP. See the section on SMT configuration for more information.

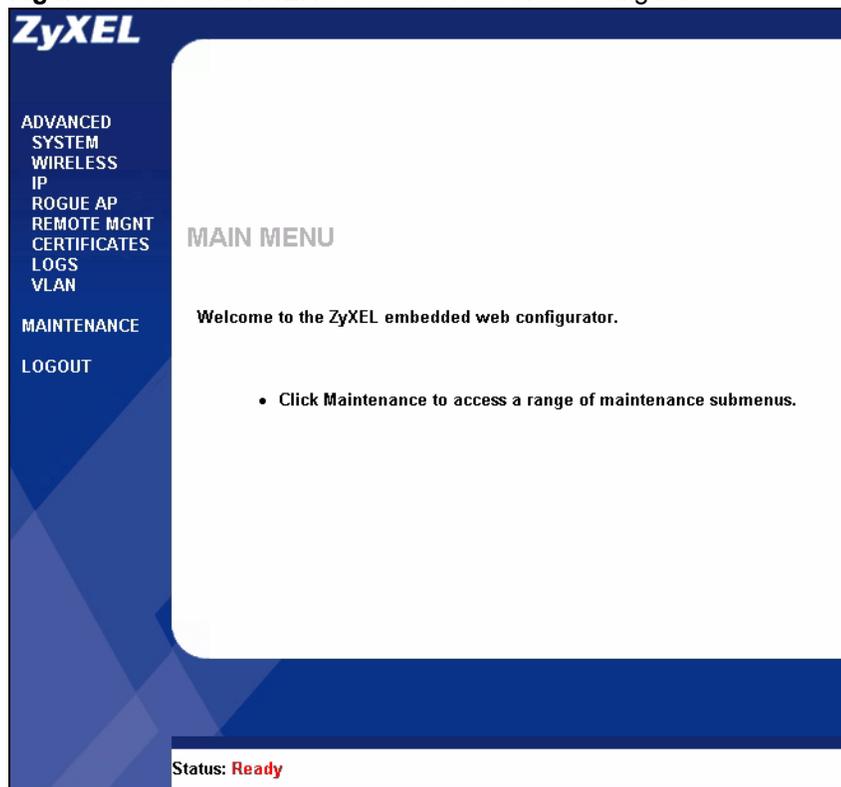
2.3 Navigating the Web Configurator

The following summarizes how to navigate the web configurator from the **MAIN MENU** screen.

Click **LOGOUT** at any time to exit the web configurator.

Check the status bar at the bottom of the screen when you click **Apply** or **OK** to verify that the configuration has been updated.

Figure 9 The MAIN MENU Screen of the Web Configurator



Click the links under **ADVANCED** to configure advanced features such as **SYSTEM** (General Setup, Password and Time Zone), **WIRELESS** (Wireless, SSID, Security, RADIUS, Layer-2 Isolation, MAC Filter), **IP**, **ROGUE AP** (Configuration, Friendly AP, Rogue AP), **REMOTE MGNT** (Telnet, FTP, WWW and SNMP), **CERTIFICATES** (My Certificates, Trusted CAs), **LOGS** (View Logs and Log Settings) and **VLAN** (Wireless VLAN and RADIUS VLAN).

Click **MAINTENANCE** to view information about your ZyXEL Device or upgrade configuration and firmware files. Maintenance features include **Status** (Statistics), **Association List**, **Channel Usage**, **F/W** (firmware) **Upload**, **Configuration** (Backup, Restore and Default) and **Restart**.

Tutorial

This chapter provides step-by-step guidelines showing how to configure your ZyXEL Device for some example scenarios. The first example shows how to create multiple wireless networks, and the second example shows how to use the rogue AP detection feature.

3.1 How to Configure Multiple Wireless Networks

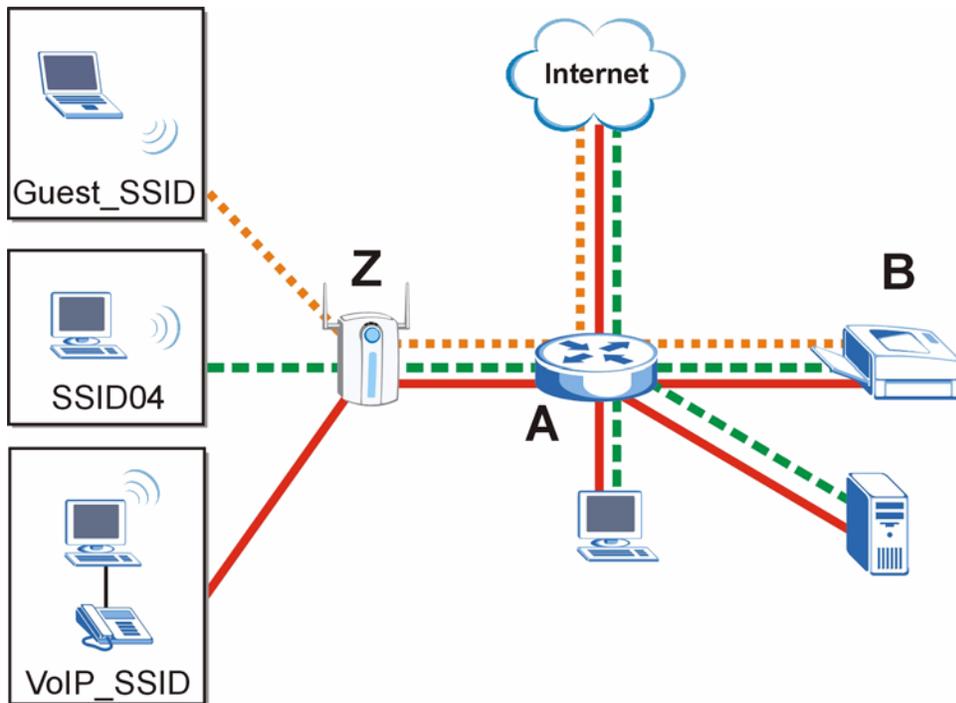
In this example, you have been using your ZyXEL Device as an access point for your office network (See your Quick Start Guide for information on how to set up your ZyXEL Device in Access Point mode). Now your network is expanding and you want to make use of the MBSSID feature (see [Section 7.1 on page 97](#)) to provide multiple wireless networks. Each wireless network will cater for a different type of user.

You want to make three wireless networks: one standard office wireless network with all the same settings you already have, another wireless network with high Quality of Service (QoS) settings for Voice over IP users, and a guest network that allows visitors to your office to access only the Internet and the network printer.

To do this, you will take the following steps:

- 1 Change the operating mode from Access Point to MBSSID and reactivate the standard network.
- 2 Configure a wireless network for Voice over IP users.
- 3 Configure a wireless network for guests to your office.

The following figure shows the multiple networks you want to set up. Your ZyXEL Device is marked **Z**, the main network router is marked **A**, and your network printer is marked **B**.

Figure 10 Tutorial: Example MBSSID Setup

The standard network (**SSID04**) has access to all resources. The VoIP network (**VoIP_SSID**) has access to all resources and a high Quality of Service (QoS) setting (see [Section 5.3 on page 69](#) for information on QoS). The guest network (**Guest_SSID**) has access to the Internet and the network printer only, and a low QoS setting.

To configure these settings, you need to know the MAC (Media Access Control) addresses of the devices you want to allow users of the guest network to access. The following table shows the addresses used in this example.

Table 2 Tutorial: Example Information

Network router (A) MAC address	00:AA:00:AA:00:AA
Network printer (B) MAC address	AA:00:AA:00:AA:00

3.1.1 Change the Operating Mode

Log in to the ZyXEL Device (see [Section 2.1 on page 39](#)). Click **WIRELESS > Wireless**. The **Wireless** screen appears. In this example, the ZyXEL Device is set to **Access Point** operating mode, and is currently using the **SSID04** profile.

Figure 11 Tutorial: Wireless LAN: Before

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Operating Mode Access Point					
802.11 Mode 802.11b+g					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Super Mode					
Choose Channel ID Channel-06 2437MHz or Scan					
RTS/CTS Threshold 2346 <small>(256 ~ 2346)</small>					
Fragmentation Threshold 2346 <small>(256 ~ 2346)</small>					
Output Power 100%					
SSID Profile SSID04					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Breathing LED					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Roaming Active					
Apply Reset					

Select **MBSSID** from the **Operating Mode** drop-down list box. The screen displays as follows.

Figure 12 Tutorial: Wireless LAN: Change Mode

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Operating Mode MBSSID					
802.11 Mode 802.11b+g					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Super Mode					
Choose Channel ID Channel-06 2437MHz or Scan					
RTS/CTS Threshold 2346 <small>(256 ~ 2346)</small>					
Fragmentation Threshold 2346 <small>(256 ~ 2346)</small>					
Output Power 100%					
Select SSID Profile					
Index	Profile	Index	Profile		
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	VoIP_SSID	5 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03		
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Guest_SSID	6 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03		
3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SSID04	7 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03		
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03	8 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Breathing LED					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)					
<input type="checkbox"/> Roaming Active					
Apply Reset					

This **Select SSID Profile** table allows you to activate or deactivate SSID profiles. Your wireless network was previously using the **SSID04** profile, so select **SSID04** in one of the **Profile** list boxes (number **3** in this example).

Select the **Index** box for the entry and click **Apply** to activate the profile. Your standard wireless network (**SSID04**) is now accessible to your wireless clients as before. You do not need to configure anything else for your standard network.

3.1.2 Configure the VoIP Network

Next, click **WIRELESS > SSID**. The following screen displays. Note that the **SSID04** SSID profile (the standard network) is using the **security01** security profile. You cannot change this security profile without changing the standard network's parameters, so when you set up security for the **VoIP_SSID** and **Guest_SSID** profiles you will need to set different security profiles.

Figure 13 Tutorial: WIRELESS > SSID

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter	
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	security01	radius01	VoIP
<input type="radio"/>	2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	3	SSID03	ZyXEL03	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	4	SSID04	ZyXEL04	security01	radius01	WPA2-PSK
<input type="radio"/>	5	SSID05	ZyXEL05	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	6	SSID06	ZyXEL06	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	7	SSID07	ZyXEL07	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	8	SSID08	ZyXEL08	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	9	SSID09	ZyXEL09	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	10	SSID10	ZyXEL10	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	11	SSID11	ZyXEL11	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	12	SSID12	ZyXEL12	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	13	SSID13	ZyXEL13	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	14	SSID14	ZyXEL14	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	15	SSID15	ZyXEL15	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	16	SSID16	ZyXEL16	security01	radius01	NONE

The Voice over IP (VoIP) network will use the pre-configured SSID profile, so select **VoIP_SSID**'s radio button and click **Edit**. The following screen displays.

Figure 14 Tutorial: VoIP SSID Profile Edit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Name :		VoIP_SSID			
SSID :		VoIP_SSID_Example			
Hide Name(SSID) :		Enable ▾			
Security :		security02 ▾			
RADIUS :		radius01 ▾			
QoS :		VoIP			
L2 Isolation :		Disable ▾			
Intra-BSS Traffic blocking :		Disable ▾			
MAC Filtering :		Disable ▾			
		Apply		Reset	

- Choose a new SSID for the VoIP network. In this example, enter **VOIP_SSID_Example**. Note that although the SSID changes, the SSID profile name (**VoIP_SSID**) remains the same as before.
- Select **Enable** from the **Hide Name (SSID)** list box. You want only authorized company employees to use this network, so there is no need to broadcast the SSID to wireless clients scanning the area.
- The standard network (SSID04) is currently using the **security01** profile, so use a different profile for the VoIP network. If you used the **security01** profile, anyone who could access the standard network could access the VoIP wireless network. Select **security02** from the **Security** field.
- Leave all the other fields at their defaults and click **Apply**.

3.1.2.1 Set Up Security for the VoIP Profile

Now you need to configure the security settings to use on the VoIP wireless network. Click the **Security** tab.

Figure 15 Tutorial: VoIP Security

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<input type="radio"/>		Index	Profile Name	Security Mode	
<input type="radio"/>		1	security01	WPA2-PSK	
<input checked="" type="radio"/>		2	security02	None	
<input type="radio"/>		3	security03	None	
<input type="radio"/>		4	security04	None	
<input type="radio"/>		5	security05	None	
<input type="radio"/>		6	security06	None	
<input type="radio"/>		7	security07	None	
<input type="radio"/>		8	security08	None	
<input type="radio"/>		9	security09	None	
<input type="radio"/>		10	security10	None	
<input type="radio"/>		11	security11	None	
<input type="radio"/>		12	security12	None	
<input type="radio"/>		13	security13	None	
<input type="radio"/>		14	security14	None	
<input type="radio"/>		15	security15	None	
<input type="radio"/>		16	security16	None	

You already chose to use the **security02** profile for this network, so select the radio button for **security02** and click **Edit**. The following screen appears.

Figure 16 Tutorial: VoIP Security Profile Edit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Name :		<input type="text" value="VoIP_Security"/>			
Security Mode :		<input type="text" value="WPA2-PSK"/>			
Pre-Shared Key :		<input type="text" value="ThisismyWPA2-PSKpre-sharedkey"/>			
ReAuthentication Timer :		<input type="text" value="1000"/>	(in seconds)		
Idle Timeout :		<input type="text" value="3600"/>	(in seconds)		
Group Key Update Timer :		<input type="text" value="1800"/>	(in seconds)		

- Change the **Name** field to “VoIP_Security” to make it easier to remember and identify.
- In this example, you do not have a RADIUS server for authentication, so select **WPA2-PSK** in the **Security Mode** field. WPA2-PSK provides strong security that anyone with a compatible wireless client can use, once they know the pre-shared key (PSK). Enter the PSK you want to use in your network in the **Pre Shared Key** field. In this example, the PSK is “ThisismyWPA2-PSKpre-sharedkey”.

Figure 19 Tutorial: Guest Edit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Name :		Guest_SSID			
SSID :		Guest_SSID_Example			
Hide Name(SSID) :		Disable			
Security :		security03			
RADIUS :		radius01			
QoS :		NONE			
L2 Isolation :		Enable			
Intra-BSS Traffic blocking :		Enable			
MAC Filtering :		Disable			
		Apply		Reset	

- Choose a new SSID for the guest network. In this example, enter **Guest_SSID_Example**. Note that although the SSID changes, the SSID profile name (**Guest_SSID**) remains the same as before.
- Select **Disable** from the **Hide Name (SSID)** list box. This makes it easier for guests to configure their own computers' wireless clients to your network's settings.
- The standard network (SSID04) is already using the **security01** profile, and the VoIP network is using the **security02** profile (renamed **VoIP_Security**) so select the **security03** profile from the **Security** field.
- Leave all the other fields at their defaults and click **Apply**.

3.1.3.1 Set Up Security for the Guest Profile

Now you need to configure the security settings to use on the guest wireless network. Click the **Security** tab.

You already chose to use the **security03** profile for this network, so select **security03**'s entry in the list and click **Edit**. The following screen appears.

Figure 20 Tutorial: Guest Security Profile Edit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Name :		Guest_Security			
Security Mode :		WPA-PSK			
Pre-Shared Key :		ThisismyGuestWPApre-shared-key			
ReAuthentication Timer :		1800 (in seconds)			
Idle Timeout :		3600 (in seconds)			
Group Key Update Timer :		1800 (in seconds)			
		Apply		Reset	

- Change the **Name** field to "Guest_Security" to make it easier to remember and identify.

- Select **WPA-PSK** in the **Security Mode** field. WPA-PSK provides strong security that is supported by most wireless clients. Even though your Guest_SSID clients do not have access to sensitive information on the network, you should not leave the network without security. An attacker could still cause damage to the network or intercept unsecured communications.
- Enter the PSK you want to use in your network in the **Pre Shared Key** field. In this example, the PSK is “ThisismyGuestWPApre-sharedkey”.
- Click **Apply**. The **WIRELESS > Security** screen displays. Ensure that the **Profile Name** for entry 3 displays “**Guest_Security**” and that the **Security Mode** is **WPA-PSK**.

Figure 21 Tutorial: Guest Security: Updated

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
		Index	Profile Name	Security Mode	
<input type="radio"/>		1	security01	WPA2-PSK	
<input type="radio"/>		2	VoIP_Security	WPA2-PSK	
<input checked="" type="radio"/>		3	Guest_Security	WPA-PSK	
<input type="radio"/>		4	security04	None	

3.1.3.2 Set up Layer 2 Isolation

Configure layer 2 isolation to control the specific devices you want the users on your guest network to access. Click **WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation**. The following screen appears.

Figure 22 Tutorial: Layer 2 Isolation

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Layer-2 Isolation Configuration					
Allow devices with these MAC addresses					
Set	MAC Address		Set	MAC Address	
1	00:AA:00:AA:00:AA		17	00:00:00:00:00:00	
2	AA:00:AA:00:AA:00		18	00:00:00:00:00:00	
3	00:00:00:00:00:00		19	00:00:00:00:00:00	
4	00:00:00:00:00:00		20	00:00:00:00:00:00	
5	00:00:00:00:00:00		21	00:00:00:00:00:00	
6	00:00:00:00:00:00		22	00:00:00:00:00:00	
7	00:00:00:00:00:00		23	00:00:00:00:00:00	
8	00:00:00:00:00:00		24	00:00:00:00:00:00	
9	00:00:00:00:00:00		25	00:00:00:00:00:00	
10	00:00:00:00:00:00		26	00:00:00:00:00:00	
11	00:00:00:00:00:00		27	00:00:00:00:00:00	
12	00:00:00:00:00:00		28	00:00:00:00:00:00	
13	00:00:00:00:00:00		29	00:00:00:00:00:00	
14	00:00:00:00:00:00		30	00:00:00:00:00:00	
15	00:00:00:00:00:00		31	00:00:00:00:00:00	
16	00:00:00:00:00:00		32	00:00:00:00:00:00	

Enter the MAC addresses of the two network devices you want users on the guest network to be able to access; the main network router (00:AA:00:AA:00:AA) and the network printer (AA:00:AA:00:AA:00). Click **Apply**.

3.1.3.3 Activate the Guest Profile

You need to activate the **Guest_SSID** profile before it can be used. Click the **Wireless** tab. In the **Select SSID Profile** table, select the check box for the **Guest_SSID** profile and click **Apply**.

Figure 23 Tutorial: Activate Guest Profile

The screenshot shows a configuration page with an 'Output Power' dropdown set to '100%'. Below it is a table titled 'Select SSID Profile' with two columns of 'Index' and 'Profile'. The 'Guest_SSID' profile is highlighted with a red oval.

Index	Profile	Index	Profile
1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	VoIP_SSID	5 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03
2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Guest_SSID	6 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03
3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SSID04	7 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03	8 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03

Your Guest wireless network is now ready to use.

3.1.4 Testing the Wireless Networks

To make sure that the three networks are correctly configured, do the following.

- On a computer with a wireless client, scan for access points. You should see the **Guest_SSID** network, but not the **VoIP_SSID** network. If you can see the **VoIP_SSID** network, go to its SSID Edit screen and make sure **Hide Name (SSID)** is set to **Enable**. Whether or not you see the standard network's SSID (**SSID04**) depends on whether "hide SSID" is enabled.
- Try to access each network using the correct security settings, and then using incorrect security settings, such as the WPA-PSK for another active network. If the behavior is different from expected (for example, if you can access the VoIP wireless network using the security settings for the Guest_SSID wireless network) check that the SSID profile is set to use the correct security profile, and that the settings of the security profile are correct.
- Access the Guest_SSID network and try to access other resources than those specified in the Layer-2 Isolation screen.

You can use the ping utility to do this. Click **Start > Run...** and enter "cmd" in the **Open:** field. Click **OK**. At the **c:\>** prompt, enter "ping 192.168.1.10" (substitute the IP address of a real device on your network that is not on the layer 2 isolation list). If you receive a reply, check the settings in the **WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation** screen, and ensure that layer 2 isolation is enabled in the Guest_SSID profile screen.

3.2 How to Set Up and Use Rogue AP Detection

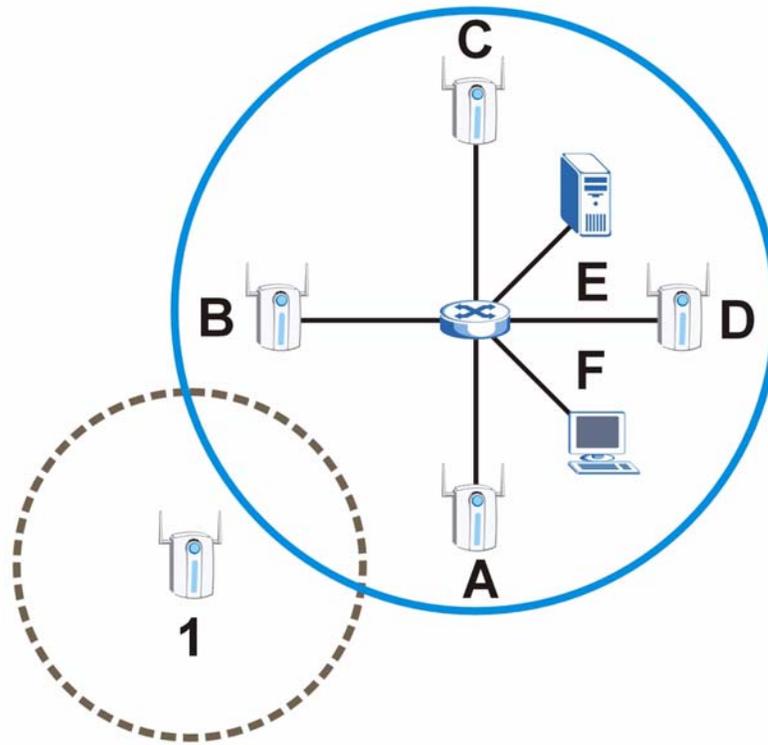
This example shows you how to configure the rogue AP detection feature on the ZyXEL Device. A rogue AP is a wireless access point operating in a network's coverage area that is not a sanctioned part of that network. The example also shows how to set the ZyXEL Device to send out e-mail alerts whenever it detects a rogue wireless access point. See [Chapter 10 on page 117](#) for background information on the rogue AP function and security considerations.

In this example, you want to ensure that your company's data is not accessible to an attacker gaining entry to your wireless network through a rogue AP.

Your wireless network operates in an office building. It consists of four access points (all ZyXEL Devices) and a variable number of wireless clients. You also know that the coffee shop on the ground floor has a wireless network consisting of a single access point, which can be detected and accessed from your floor of the building. There are no other static wireless networks in your coverage area.

The following diagram shows the wireless networks in your area. Your access points are marked **A**, **B**, **C** and **D**. You also have a network mail/file server, marked **E**, and a computer, marked **F**, connected to the wired network. The coffee shop's access point is marked **1**.

Figure 24 Tutorial: Wireless Network Example



In the figure, the solid circle represents the range of your wireless network, and the dashed circle represents the extent of the coffee shop's wireless network. Note that the two networks overlap. This means that one or more of your APs can detect the AP (1) in the other wireless network.

When configuring the rogue AP feature on your ZyXEL Devices in this example, you will need to use the information in the following table. You need the IP addresses of your APs to access their Web configurators, and you need the MAC address of each AP to configure the friendly AP list. You need the IP address of the mail server to set up e-mail alerts.

Table 3 Tutorial: Rogue AP Example Information

DEVICE	IP ADDRESS	MAC ADDRESS
Access Point A	192.168.1.1	00:AA:00:AA:00:AA
Access Point B	192.168.1.2	AA:00:AA:00:AA:00
Access Point C	192.168.1.3	A0:0A:A0:0A:A0:0A
Access Point D	192.168.1.4	0A:A0:0A:A0:0A:A0

Table 3 Tutorial: Rogue AP Example Information

DEVICE	IP ADDRESS	MAC ADDRESS
File / Mail Server E	192.168.1.25	N/A
Access Point 1	UNKNOWN	AF:AF:AF:FA:FA:FA



The ZyXEL Device can detect the MAC addresses of APs automatically. However, it is more secure to obtain the correct MAC addresses from another source and add them to the friendly AP list manually, if possible. For example, an attacker's AP mimicking the correct SSID could be placed on the friendly AP list by accident, if selected from the list of auto-detected APs. In this example you have spoken to the coffee shop's owner, who has told you the correct MAC address of his AP.

In this example, you will do the following things.

- 1 Set up and save a friendly AP list.
- 2 Activate periodic Rogue AP Detection.
- 3 Set up e-mail alerts.
- 4 Configure your other access points.
- 5 Test the setup.

3.2.1 Set Up and Save a Friendly AP list

Take the following steps to set up and save a list of access points you want to allow in your network's coverage area.

- 1 On a computer connected to the wired network (**F** in the previous figure), open your Internet browser and enter the URL of access point **A** (192.168.1.1). Login to the Web configurator and click **ROGUE AP > Friendly AP**. The following screen displays.

Figure 25 Tutorial: Friendly AP (Before Data Entry)

- 2 Fill in the **MAC Address** and **Description** fields as in the following table. Click **Add** after you enter the details of each AP to include it in the list.

Table 4 Tutorial: Friendly AP Information

MAC ADDRESS	DESCRIPTION
00:AA:00:AA:00:AA	My Access Point _A_
AA:00:AA:00:AA:00	My Access Point _B_

Table 4 Tutorial: Friendly AP Information

MAC ADDRESS	DESCRIPTION
A0:0A:A0:0A:A0:0A	My Access Point _C_
0A:A0:0A:A0:0A:A0	My Access Point _D_
AF:AF:AF:FA:FA:FA	Coffee Shop Access Point _1_



You can add APs that are not part of your network to the friendly AP list, as long as you know that they do not pose a threat to your network's security.

The Friendly AP screen now appears as follows.

Figure 26 Tutorial: Friendly AP (After Data Entry)

The screenshot shows the 'Friendly AP' configuration page. At the top, there are tabs for 'Configuration', 'Friendly AP', and 'Rogue AP'. Below the tabs is a section titled 'Add Friendly AP' with two input fields for 'MAC Address' and 'Description', and an 'Add' button. Below that is a section titled 'Friendly AP List' containing a table with the following data:

#	MAC Address	SSID	Channel	Security	Description	
1	00:aa:00:aa:00:aa	N/A	N/A	N/A	My Access Point _A_	
2	aa:00:aa:00:aa:00	N/A	N/A	N/A	My Access Point _B_	
3	a0:0a:a0:0a:a0:0a	N/A	N/A	N/A	My Access Point _C_	
4	0a:a0:0a:a0:0a:a0	N/A	N/A	N/A	My Access Point _D_	
5	af:af:af:fa:fa:fa	N/A	N/A	N/A	Coffee Shop Access Point _1_	

- Next, you will save the list of friendly APs in order to provide a backup and upload it to your other access points.

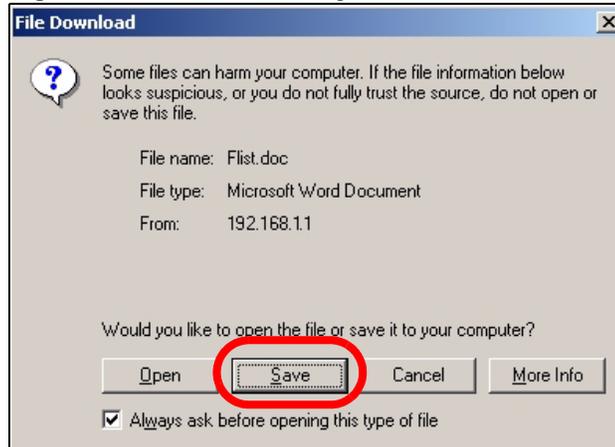
Click the **Configuration** tab. The following screen appears.

Figure 27 Tutorial: Configuration

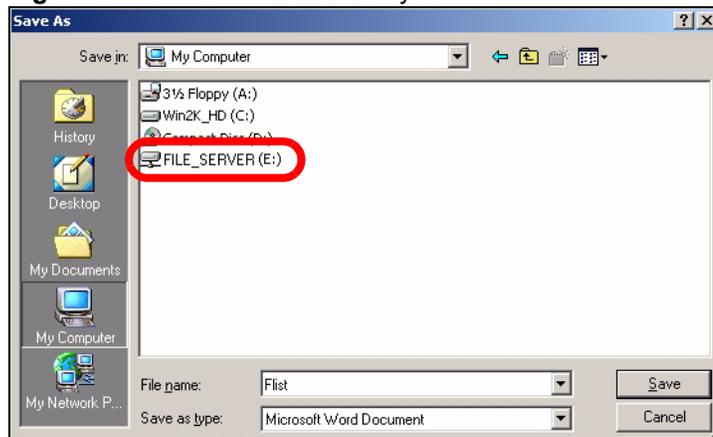
The screenshot shows the 'Configuration' page. At the top, there are tabs for 'Configuration', 'Friendly AP', and 'Rogue AP'. Below the tabs is a section titled 'Configuration' with the following settings:

- Active Rogue AP Period Detection: Yes (dropdown menu)
- Period: 10 (min.) (input field)
- Friendly AP List: Export (button, highlighted with a red circle)
- File Path: (input field) Browse... (button) Import (button)
- Apply (button) Reset (button)

- Click **Export**. If a window similar to the following appears, click **Save**.

Figure 28 Tutorial: Warning

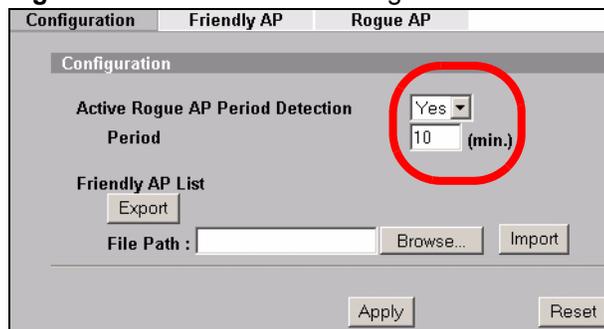
- 5 Save the friendly AP list somewhere it can be accessed by all the other access points on the network. In this example, save it on the network file server (E in Figure 24 on page 53). The default filename is “Flist”.

Figure 29 Tutorial: Save Friendly AP list

3.2.2 Activate Periodic Rogue AP Detection

Take the following steps to activate rogue AP detection on the first of your ZyXEL Devices.

- 1 In the **ROGUE AP > Configuration** screen, select **Yes** from the **Activate Rogue AP Period Detection** field.

Figure 30 Tutorial: Periodic Rogue AP Detection

- 2 In the **Period (min.)** field, enter how often you want the ZyXEL Device to scan for rogue APs. You can have the ZyXEL Device scan anywhere from once every ten minutes to once every hour. In this example, enter “10”.
- 3 Click **Apply**.

3.2.3 Set Up E-mail Logs

In this section, you will configure the first of your four APs to send a log message to your e-mail inbox whenever a rogue AP is discovered in your wireless network’s coverage area.

- 1 Click **LOGS > Log Settings**. The following screen appears.

Figure 31 Tutorial: Log Settings

The screenshot shows the 'Log Settings' configuration page. It is divided into three main sections: 'Address Info', 'Syslog Logging', and 'Send Log'.
 - **Address Info:** Contains fields for 'Mail Server' (192.168.1.25), 'Mail Subject' (ALERT_Access_Point_A), 'Send log to', and 'Send alerts to' (myname@myfirm.com). There are also checkboxes for 'SMTP Authentication' and input fields for 'User NAME' and 'Password'.
 - **Syslog Logging:** Includes a checkbox for 'Active', 'Syslog IP Address' (0.0.0.0), and 'Log Facility' (Local 1).
 - **Send Log:** Features 'Log Schedule' (None), 'Day for Sending Log' (Sunday), 'Time for Sending Log' (0 hour, 0 minute), and a checkbox for 'Clear log after sending mail'.
 - **Log:** A list of log categories with checkboxes: System Maintenance, System Errors, PKI, SSL/TLS, 802.1x, Wireless, and Rogue AP Detection.
 - **Send immediate alert:** A section with checkboxes for System Errors, PKI, and Rogue AP Detection.
 - At the bottom, there are 'Apply' and 'Reset' buttons.

- In this example, your mail server’s IP address is **192.168.1.25**. Enter this IP address in the **Mail Server** field.
- Enter a subject line for the alert e-mails in the **Mail Subject** field. Choose a subject that is eye-catching and identifies the access point - in this example, “ALERT_Access_Point_A”.
- Enter the email address to which you want alerts to be sent (**myname@myfirm.com**, in this example).

- In the **Send Immediate Alert** section, select the events you want to trigger immediate e-mails. Ensure that **Rogue AP** is selected.
- Click **Apply**.

3.2.4 Configure Your Other Access Points

Access point **A** is now configured to do the following.

- Scan for access points in its coverage area every ten minutes.
- Recognize friendly access points from a list.
- Send immediate alerts to your email account if it detects an access point not on the list.

Now you need to configure the other wireless access points on your network to do the same things.

For each access point, take the following steps.

- 1 From a computer on the wired network, enter the access point's IP address and login to its Web configurator. See [Table 3 on page 53](#) for the example IP addresses.
- 2 Import the friendly AP list. Click **ROGUE AP > Configuration > Browse...** Find the "Flist" file where you previously saved it on the network and click **Open**.
- 3 Click **Import**. Check the **ROGUE AP > Friendly AP** screen to ensure that the friendly AP list has been correctly uploaded.
- 4 Activate periodic rogue AP detection. See [Section 3.2.2 on page 56](#).
- 5 Set up e-mail logs as in [Section 3.2.3 on page 57](#), but change the **Mail Subject** field so you can tell which AP the alerts come from ("ALERT_Access_Point_B", etc.)

3.2.5 Test the Setup

Next, test your setup to ensure it is correctly configured.

- Log into each AP's Web configurator and click **ROGUE AP > Rogue AP**. Click **Refresh**. If any of the MAC addresses from [Table 4 on page 54](#) appear in the list, the friendly AP function may be incorrectly configured - check the **ROGUE AP > Friendly AP** screen. If any entries appear in the rogue AP list that are not in [Table 4 on page 54](#), write down the AP's MAC address for future reference and check your e-mail inbox. If you have received a rogue AP alert, email alerts are correctly configured on that ZyXEL Device.
- If you have another access point that is not used in your network, make a note of its MAC address and set it up next to each of your ZyXEL Devices in turn while the network is running.

Either wait for at least ten minutes (to ensure the ZyXEL Device performs a scan in that time) or login to the ZyXEL Device's Web configurator and click **ROGUE AP > Rogue AP > Refresh** to have the ZyXEL Device perform a scan immediately.

- Check the **ROGUE AP > Rogue AP** screen. You should see an entry in the list with the same MAC address as your "rogue" AP.
- Check the **LOGS > View Logs** screen. You should see a **Rogue AP Detection** entry in red text, including the MAC address of your "rogue" AP.

- Check your e-mail. You should have received at least one e-mail alert (your other ZyXEL Devices may also have sent alerts, depending on their proximity and the output power of your “rogue” AP).

PART II

The Web Configurator

- System Screens (63)
- Wireless Configuration (67)
- Wireless Security Configuration (81)
- MBSSID and SSID (97)
- Other Wireless Configuration (105)
- IP Screen (113)
- Rogue AP (117)
- Remote Management (123)
- Certificates (133)
- Log Screens (151)
- VLAN (157)
- Maintenance (175)

System Screens

4.1 System Overview

This section provides information on general system setup.

4.2 Configuring General Setup

Click **SYSTEM > General**.

Figure 32 System General Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 5 System General Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General Setup	
System Name	Type a descriptive name to identify the ZyXEL Device in the Ethernet network. This name can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters long. Spaces are not allowed, but dashes "-" and underscores "_" are accepted.
Domain Name	This is not a required field. Leave this field blank or enter the domain name here if you know it.
Administrator Inactivity Timer	Type how many minutes a management session (either via the web configurator or SMT) can be left idle before the session times out. The default is 5 minutes. After it times out you have to log in with your password again. Very long idle timeouts may have security risks. A value of "0" means a management session never times out, no matter how long it has been left idle (not recommended).
System DNS Servers	

Table 5 System General Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
First DNS Server Second DNS Server Third DNS Server	Select From DHCP if your DHCP server dynamically assigns DNS server information (and the ZyXEL Device's Ethernet IP address). The field to the right displays the (read-only) DNS server IP address that the DHCP assigns. Select User-Defined if you have the IP address of a DNS server. Enter the DNS server's IP address in the field to the right. If you chose User-Defined , but leave the IP address set to 0.0.0.0, User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply . If you set a second choice to User-Defined , and enter the same IP address, the second User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply . Select None if you do not want to configure DNS servers. If you do not configure a DNS server, you must know the IP address of a machine in order to access it. The default setting is None .
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

4.3 Configuring Password

It is strongly recommended that you change your ZyXEL Device's password. Click **SYSTEM > Password**. The screen appears as shown.

If you forget your ZyXEL Device's password (or IP address), you will need to reset the device. See the section on resetting the ZyXEL Device for details

Figure 33 Password.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 6 Password

LABEL	DESCRIPTIONS
Old Password	Type in your existing system password (1234 is the default password).
New Password	Type your new system password (up to 31 characters). Note that as you type a password, the screen displays an asterisk (*) for each character you type.
Retype to Confirm	Retype your new system password for confirmation.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

4.4 Configuring Time Setting

To change your ZyXEL Device's time and date, click **SYSTEM > Time Setting**. The screen appears as shown. Use this screen to configure the ZyXEL Device's time based on your local time zone.

Figure 34 Time Setting

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 7 Time Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Time Protocol	Select the time service protocol that your time server sends when you turn on the ZyXEL Device. Not all time servers support all protocols, so you may have to check with your ISP/network administrator or use trial and error to find a protocol that works. The main difference between them is the format. Daytime (RFC 867) format is day/month/year/time zone of the server. Time (RFC 868) format displays a 4-byte integer giving the total number of seconds since 1970/1/1 at 0:0:0. The default, NTP (RFC 1305) , is similar to Time (RFC 868). Select None to enter the time and date manually.
Time Server Address	Enter the IP address or the URL of your time server. Check with your ISP/network administrator if you are unsure of this information.
Current Time (hh:mm:ss)	This field displays the time of your ZyXEL Device. Each time you reload this page, the ZyXEL Device synchronizes the time with the time server.
New Time (hh:mm:ss)	This field displays the last updated time from the time server. When you select None in the Time Protocol field, enter the new time in this field and then click Apply .
Current Date (yyyy/mm/dd)	This field displays the date of your ZyXEL Device. Each time you reload this page, the ZyXEL Device synchronizes the date with the time server.

Table 7 Time Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
New Date (yyyy/mm/dd)	This field displays the last updated date from the time server. When you select None in the Time Protocol field, enter the new date in this field and then click Apply .
Time Zone	Choose the time zone of your location. This will set the time difference between your time zone and Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).
Daylight Savings	Select this option if you use daylight savings time. Daylight saving is a period from late spring to early fall when many countries set their clocks ahead of normal local time by one hour to give more daytime light in the evening.
Start Date (mm-dd)	Enter the month and day that your daylight-savings time starts on if you selected Daylight Savings .
End Date (mm-dd)	Enter the month and day that your daylight-savings time ends on if you selected Daylight Savings .
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

Wireless Configuration

This chapter discusses how to configure the Wireless screens on the ZyXEL Device.

5.1 Wireless LAN Overview

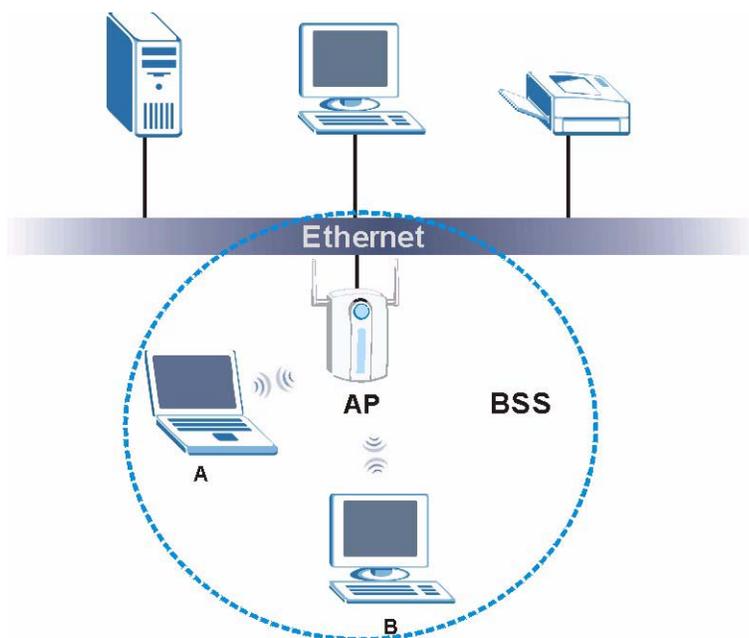
This section introduces the wireless LAN (WLAN) and some basic scenarios.

5.1.1 BSS

A Basic Service Set (BSS) exists when all communications between wireless stations or between a wireless station and a wired network client go through one access point (AP).

Intra-BSS traffic is traffic between wireless stations in the BSS. When Intra-BSS traffic blocking is disabled, wireless station A and B can access the wired network and communicate with each other. When Intra-BSS traffic blocking is enabled, wireless station A and B can still access the wired network but cannot communicate with each other.

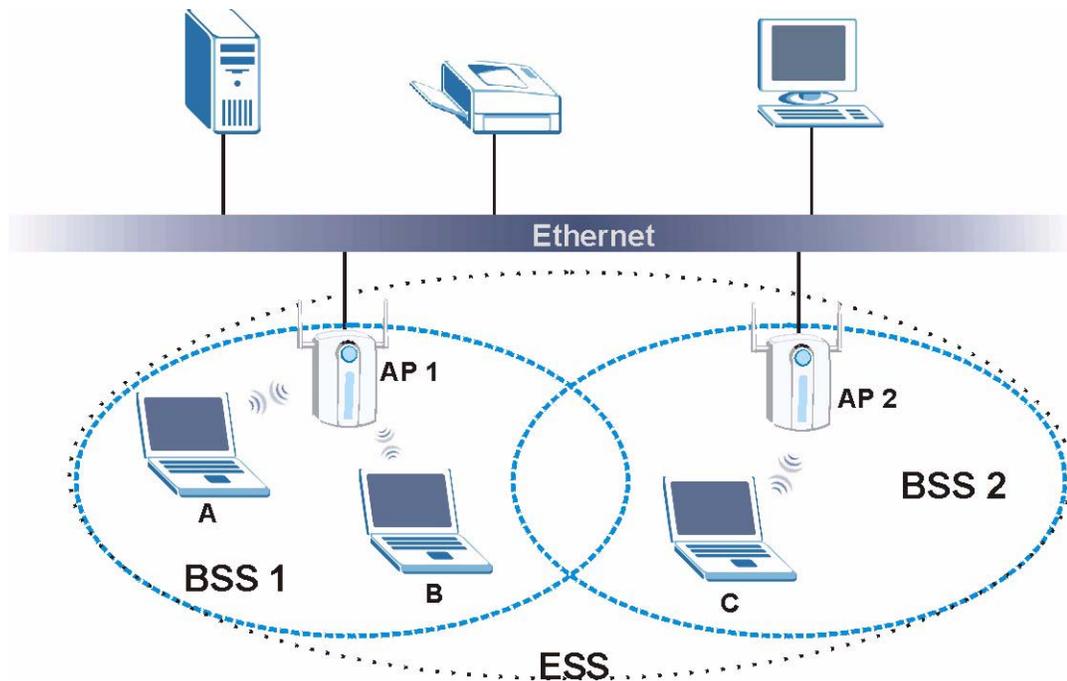
Figure 35 Basic Service set



5.1.2 ESS

An Extended Service Set (ESS) consists of a series of overlapping BSSs, each containing an access point, with each access point connected together by a wired network. This wired connection between APs is called a Distribution System (DS). An ESSID (ESS IDentification) uniquely identifies each ESS. All access points and their associated wireless stations within the same ESS must have the same ESSID in order to communicate.

Figure 36 Extended Service Set



5.2 Wireless LAN Basics

See the Wireless LANs Appendix for information on the following:

- Wireless LAN Topologies
- Channel
- RTS/CTS
- Fragmentation Threshold
- IEEE 802.1x
- RADIUS
- Types of Authentication
- WPA
- Security Parameters Summary

5.3 Quality of Service

This section discusses the Quality of Service (QoS) features available on the ZyXEL Device.

5.3.1 WMM QoS

WMM (Wi-Fi MultiMedia) QoS (Quality of Service) ensures quality of service in wireless networks. It controls WLAN transmission priority on packets to be sent over the wireless network.

WMM QoS prioritizes wireless traffic according to the delivery requirements of the individual and applications. WMM QoS is a part of the IEEE 802.11e QoS enhancement to certified Wi-Fi wireless networks.

On APs without WMM QoS, all traffic streams are given the same access priority to the wireless network. If the introduction of another traffic stream creates a data transmission demand that exceeds the current network capacity, then the new traffic stream reduces the throughput of the other traffic streams.

The ZyXEL Device uses WMM QoS to prioritize traffic streams according to the VLAN or DSCP information in each packet's header. The ZyXEL Device automatically determines the priority to use for an individual traffic stream. This prevents reductions in data transmission for applications that are sensitive to latency (delay) and jitter (variations in delay).

5.3.1.1 WMM QoS Priorities

The following table describes the WMM QoS priority levels that the ZyXEL Device uses.

Table 8 WMM QoS Priorities

PRIORITY LEVEL	DESCRIPTION
voice (WMM_VOICE)	Typically used for traffic that is especially sensitive to jitter. Use this priority to reduce latency for improved voice quality.
video (WMM_VIDEO)	Typically used for traffic which has some tolerance for jitter but needs to be prioritized over other data traffic.
best effort (WMM_BEST_EFFORT)	Typically used for traffic from applications or devices that lack QoS capabilities. Use best effort priority for traffic that is less sensitive to latency, but is affected by long delays, such as Internet surfing.
background (WMM_BACKGROUND)	This is typically used for non-critical traffic such as bulk transfers and print jobs that are allowed but that should not affect other applications and users. Use background priority for applications that do not have strict latency and throughput requirements.

5.3.2 ATC

Automatic Traffic Classifier (ATC) is a bandwidth management tool that prioritizes data packets sent across the network. ATC assigns each packet a priority and then queues the packet accordingly. Packets assigned a high priority are processed more quickly than those with low priority if there is congestion, allowing time-sensitive applications to flow more smoothly. Time-sensitive applications include both those that require a low level of latency and a low level of jitter such as Voice over IP or Internet gaming, and those for which jitter alone is a problem such as Internet radio or streaming video.

ATC assigns priority based on packet size, since time-sensitive applications such as Internet telephony (Voice over IP or VoIP) tend to have smaller packet sizes than non-time sensitive applications such as FTP (File Transfer Protocol). The following table shows some common applications, their time sensitivity, and their typical data packet sizes. Note that the figures given are merely examples - sizes may differ according to application and circumstances.

Table 9 Typical Packet Sizes

APPLICATION	TIME SENSITIVITY	TYPICAL PACKET SIZE (BYTES)
Voice over IP (SIP)	High	< 250
Online Gaming	High	60 ~ 90
Web browsing (http)	Medium	300 ~ 600
FTP	Low	1500

When ATC is activated, the device sends traffic with smaller packets before traffic with larger packets if the network is congested.

ATC assigns priority to packets as shown in the following table.

Table 10 Automatic Traffic Classifier Priorities

PACKET SIZE (BYTES)	ATC PRIORITY
1 ~ 250	ATC_High
250 ~ 1100	ATC_Medium
1100 +	ATC_Low

You should activate ATC on the ZyXEL Device if your wireless network includes networking devices that do not support WMM QoS, or if you want to prioritize traffic but do not want to configure WMM QoS settings.

5.3.3 ATC+WMM

The ZyXEL Device can use a mapping mechanism to use both ATC and WMM QoS. The ATC+WMM function prioritizes all packets transmitted onto the wireless network using WMM QoS, and prioritizes all packets transmitted onto the wired network using ATC. See [Section 7.2.2 on page 101](#) for details of how to configure ATC+WMM.

Use the ATC+WMM function if you want to do the following:

- enable WMM QoS on your wireless network and automatically assign a WMM priority to packets that do not already have one (see [Section 5.3.3.1 on page 70](#)).
- automatically prioritize all packets going from your wireless network to the wired network (see [Section 5.3.3.2 on page 71](#)).

5.3.3.1 ATC+WMM from LAN to WLAN

ATC+WMM from LAN (the wired Local Area Network) to WLAN (the Wireless Local Area Network) allows WMM prioritization of packets that do not already have WMM QoS priorities assigned. The ZyXEL Device automatically classifies data packets using ATC and then assigns WMM priorities based on that ATC classification.

The following table shows how priorities are assigned for packets coming from the LAN to the WLAN.

Table 11 ATC + WMM Priority Assignment (LAN to WLAN)

PACKET SIZE (BYTES)	→	ATC VALUE	→	WMM VALUE
1 ~ 250		ATC_High		WMM_VIDEO
250 ~ 1100		ATC_Medium		WMM_BEST_EFFORT
1100 +		ATC_Low		WMM_BACKGROUND

5.3.3.2 ATC+WMM from WLAN to LAN

ATC+WMM from WLAN to LAN automatically prioritizes (assigns an ATC value to) all packets coming from the WLAN. Packets are assigned an ATC value based on their WMM value, not their size.

The following table shows how priorities are assigned for packets coming from the WLAN to the LAN when using ATC+WMM.

Table 12 ATC + WMM Priority Assignment (WLAN to LAN)

WMM VALUE	→	ATC VALUE
WMM_VOICE		ATC_High
WMM_VIDEO		ATC_High
WMM_BEST_EFFORT		ATC_Medium
WMM_BACKGROUND		ATC_Low
NONE		ATC_Medium

5.3.4 Type Of Service (ToS)

Network traffic can be classified by setting the ToS (Type Of Service) values at the data source (for example, at the ZyXEL Device) so a server can decide the best method of delivery, that is the least cost, fastest route and so on.

5.3.4.1 DiffServ

DiffServ is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCPs) indicating the level of service desired. This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.

5.3.4.2 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new DS (Differentiated Services) field to replace the Type of Service (TOS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 2-bit unused field and a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels. The following figure illustrates the DS field.

DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.

Figure 37 DiffServ: Differentiated Service Field

DSCP (6-bit)	Unused (2-bit)
-----------------	-------------------

The DSCP value determines the forwarding behavior, the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule, different kinds of traffic can be marked for different priorities of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

5.3.5 ToS (Type of Service) and WMM QoS

The DSCP value of outgoing packets is between 0 and 255. 0 is the default priority. WMM QoS checks the DSCP value in the header of data packets. It gives the traffic a priority according to this number.

In order to control which priority level is given to traffic, the device sending the traffic must set the DSCP value in the header. If the DSCP value is not specified, then the traffic is treated as best-effort. This means the wireless clients and the devices with which they are communicating must both set the DSCP value in order to make the best use of WMM QoS. A Voice over IP (VoIP) device for example may allow you to define the DSCP value.

The following table lists which WMM QoS priority level the ZyXEL Device uses for specific DSCP values.

Table 13 ToS and IEEE 802.1d to WMM QoS Priority Level Mapping

DSCP VALUE	WMM QOS PRIORITY LEVEL
224, 192	voice
160, 128	video
96, 0 ^A	besteffort
64, 32	background

A. The ZyXEL Device also uses best effort for any DSCP value for which another WMM QoS priority is not specified (255, 158 or 37 for example).

5.4 Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)

STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a bridge to interact with other STP-compliant bridges in your network to ensure that only one route exists between any two stations on the network.

5.4.1 Rapid STP

The ZyXEL Device uses IEEE 802.1w RSTP (Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol) that allow faster convergence of the spanning tree (while also being backwards compatible with STP-only aware bridges). Using RSTP topology change information does not have to propagate to the root bridge and unwanted learned addresses are flushed from the filtering database. In RSTP, the port states are Discarding, Learning, and Forwarding.

5.4.2 STP Terminology

The root bridge is the base of the spanning tree.

Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame onto a LAN through that port. It is assigned according to the speed of the link to which a port is attached. The slower the media, the higher the cost - see the following table.

Table 14 STP Path Costs

	LINK SPEED	RECOMMENDED VALUE	RECOMMENDED RANGE	ALLOWED RANGE
Path Cost	4Mbps	250	100 to 1000	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Mbps	100	50 to 600	1 to 65535
Path Cost	16Mbps	62	40 to 400	1 to 65535
Path Cost	100Mbps	19	10 to 60	1 to 65535
Path Cost	1Gbps	4	3 to 10	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Gbps	2	1 to 5	1 to 65535

On each bridge, the root port is the port through which this bridge communicates with the root. It is the port on this switch with the lowest path cost to the root (the root path cost). If there is no root port, then this bridge has been accepted as the root bridge of the spanning tree network.

For each LAN segment, a designated bridge is selected. This bridge has the lowest cost to the root among the bridges connected to the LAN.

5.4.3 How STP Works

After a bridge determines the lowest cost-spanning tree with STP, it enables the root port and the ports that are the designated ports for connected LANs, and disables all other ports that participate in STP. Network packets are therefore only forwarded between enabled ports, eliminating any possible network loops.

STP-aware bridges exchange Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) periodically. When the bridged LAN topology changes, a new spanning tree is constructed.

Once a stable network topology has been established, all bridges listen for Hello BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) transmitted from the root bridge. If a bridge does not get a Hello BPDUs after a predefined interval (Max Age), the bridge assumes that the link to the root bridge is down. This bridge then initiates negotiations with other bridges to reconfigure the network to re-establish a valid network topology.

5.4.4 STP Port States

STP assigns five port states (see next table) to eliminate packet looping. A bridge port is not allowed to go directly from blocking state to forwarding state so as to eliminate transient loops.

Table 15 STP Port States

PORT STATES	DESCRIPTIONS
Disabled	STP is disabled (default).
Blocking	Only configuration and management BPDUs are received and processed.

Table 15 STP Port States

PORT STATES	DESCRIPTIONS
Listening	All BPDUs are received and processed.
Learning	All BPDUs are received and processed. Information frames are submitted to the learning process but not forwarded.
Forwarding	All BPDUs are received and processed. All information frames are received and forwarded.

5.5 Wireless Screen Overview

The following is a list of the screens you can configure on the ZyXEL Device.

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
----------	------	----------	--------	-------------------	------------

- 1 Configure the ZyXEL Device to operate in AP, AP+Bridge, Bridge/Repeater or MBSSID mode in the **Wireless** screen. You can also select an **SSID Profile** in the **Wireless** screen.
- 2 Use the **SSID** screens to view and edit SSID profiles.
- 3 Use the **Security** screen to configure wireless profiles.
- 4 Use the **RADIUS** screen to configure RADIUS authentication and accounting settings.
- 5 Use the **Layer-2 Isolation** screen to prevent wireless clients associated with your ZyXEL Device from communicating with other wireless clients, APs, computers or routers in a network.
- 6 Use the **MAC Filter** screen to allow or restrict access to your wireless network based on a client's MAC address.

5.6 Configuring Wireless Settings

Click **WIRELESS > Wireless**. The screen varies depending upon the operating mode you select.

5.6.1 Access Point Mode

Select **Access Point** as the **Operating Mode** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 38 Wireless: Access Point

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Operating Mode	Access Point				
802.11 Mode	802.11b+g				
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Super Mode					
Choose Channel ID	Channel-06 2437MHz or Scan				
RTS/CTS Threshold	2346 (256 ~ 2346)				
Fragmentation Threshold	2346 (256 ~ 2346)				
Output Power	100%				
SSID Profile	SSID03				
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Breathing LED					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)					
<input type="checkbox"/> Roaming Active					
<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/>					

The following table describes the general wireless LAN labels in this screen.

Table 16 Wireless: Access Point

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Operating Mode	Select Access Point from the drop-down list.
802.11 Mode	Select 802.11b Only to allow only IEEE 802.11b compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. Select 802.11g Only to allow only IEEE 802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. Select 802.11b+g to allow both IEEE802.11b and IEEE802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. The transmission rate of your ZyXEL Device might be reduced. Select 802.11a to allow only IEEE 802.11a compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.
Super Mode	Select this to improve data throughput on the WLAN by enabling fast frame and packet bursting.
Choose Channel ID	Set the operating frequency/channel depending on your particular region. To manually set the ZyXEL Device to use a channel, select a channel from the drop-down list box. Click MAINTENANCE and then the Channel Usage tab to open the Channel Usage screen to make sure the channel is not already used by another AP or independent peer-to-peer wireless network. To have the ZyXEL Device automatically select a channel, click Scan instead.
Scan	Click this button to have the ZyXEL Device automatically scan for and select the channel with the least interference.
RTS/CTS Threshold	(Request To Send) The threshold (number of bytes) for enabling RTS/CTS handshake. Data with its frame size larger than this value will perform the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to be larger than the maximum MSDU (MAC service data unit) size turns off the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to zero turns on the RTS/CTS handshake. Enter a value between 256 and 2346 .
Fragmentation Threshold	The threshold (number of bytes) for the fragmentation boundary for directed messages. It is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent. Enter a value between 256 and 2346 .
Output Power	Set the output power of the ZyXEL Device in this field. If there is a high density of APs in an area, decrease the output power of the ZyXEL Device to reduce interference with other APs. Select one of the following 100%(Full Power) , 50% , 25% , 12.5% or Minimum . See the product specifications for more information on your ZyXEL Device's output power.

Table 16 Wireless: Access Point

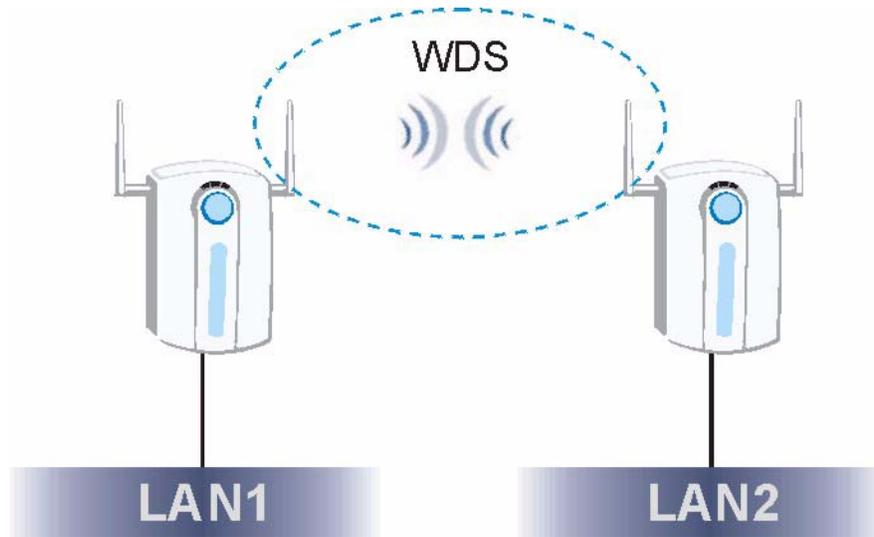
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SSID Profile	<p>The SSID (Service Set Identifier) identifies the Service Set with which a wireless station is associated. Wireless stations associating to the access point (AP) must have the same SSID. Select an SSID Profile from the drop-down list box.</p> <p>Configure SSID profiles in the SSID screen (see Section 7.2 on page 100 for information on configuring SSID).</p> <p>Note: If you are configuring the ZyXEL Device from a computer connected to the wireless LAN and you change the ZyXEL Device's SSID or security settings, you will lose your wireless connection when you press Apply to confirm. You must then change the wireless settings of your computer to match the ZyXEL Device's new settings.</p>
Enable Breathing LED	<p>Select this check box to enable the “breathing” LED, also known as the ZyAIR LED. The blue ZyAIR LED is on when the ZyXEL Device is receiving power and blinks (or breathes) when data is being transmitted to and from its wireless stations.</p> <p>Clear the check box to turn this LED off even when the ZyXEL Device is on and data is being transmitted and received.</p>
Enable Spanning Tree Control (STP)	<p>(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a bridge to interact with other (R)STP - compliant bridges in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network. Select the check box to activate STP on the ZyXEL Device.</p>
Roaming Active	<p>Roaming allows wireless stations to switch from one access point to another as they move from one coverage area to another. Select this checkbox to enable roaming on the ZyXEL Device if you have two or more ZyXEL Devices on the same subnet.</p> <p>Note: All APs on the same subnet and the wireless stations must have the same SSID to allow roaming.</p>
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

5.6.2 Bridge/Repeater Mode

The ZyXEL Device can act as a wireless network bridge and establish wireless links with other APs. You need to know the MAC address of the peer device, which also must be in bridge mode.

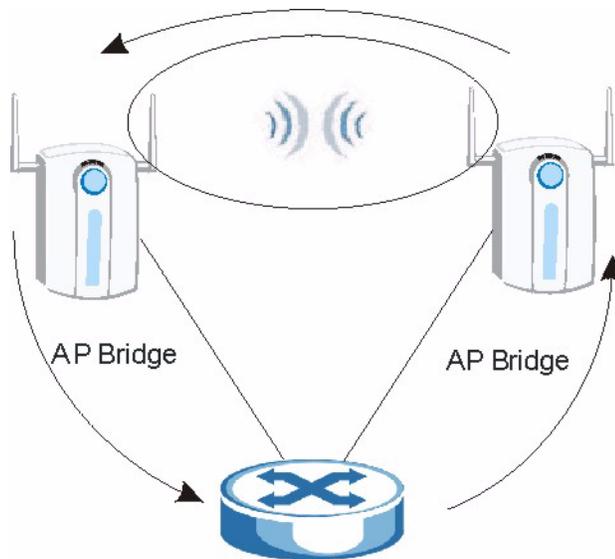
The ZyXEL Device can establish up to five wireless links with other APs.

In the example below, when both ZyXEL Devices are in Bridge/Repeater mode, they form a WDS (Wireless Distribution System) allowing the computers in LAN 1 to connect to the computers in LAN 2.

Figure 39 Bridging Example

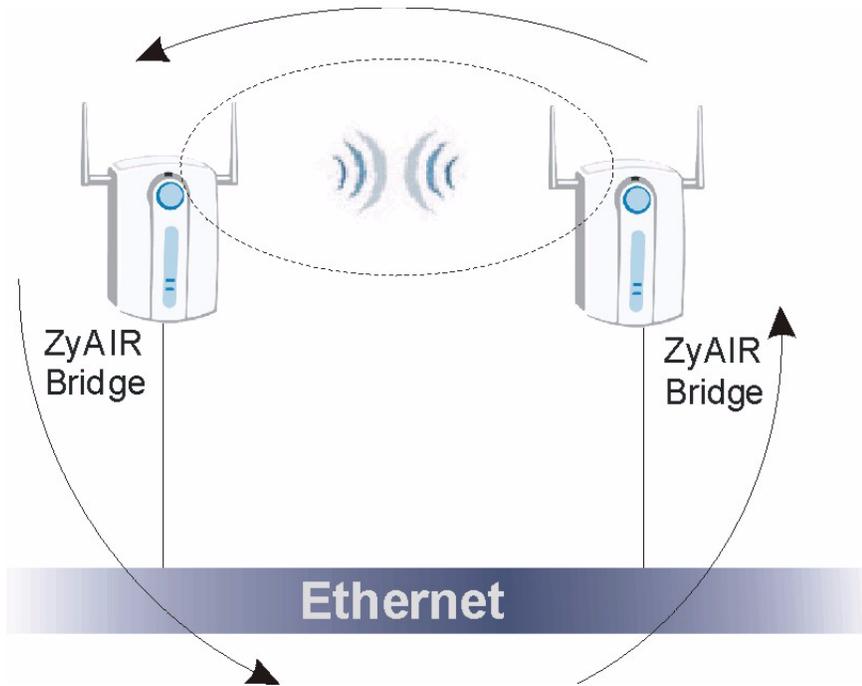
Be careful to avoid bridge loops when you enable bridging in the ZyXEL Device. Bridge loops cause broadcast traffic to circle the network endlessly, resulting in possible throughput degradation and disruption of communications. The following examples show two network topologies that can lead to this problem:

- If two or more ZyXEL Devices (in bridge mode) are connected to the same hub.

Figure 40 Bridge Loop: Two Bridges Connected to Hub

- If your ZyXEL Device (in bridge mode) is connected to a wired LAN while communicating with another wireless bridge that is also connected to the same wired LAN.

Figure 41 Bridge Loop: Bridge Connected to Wired LAN



To prevent bridge loops, ensure that you enable STP in the **Wireless** screen or your ZyXEL Device is not set to bridge mode while connected to both wired and wireless segments of the same LAN.

To have the ZyXEL Device act as a wireless bridge only, click **WIRELESS > Wireless** and select **Bridge/Repeater** as the **Operating Mode**.

Figure 42 Wireless: Bridge/Repeater

Wireless

Operating Mode: Bridge/Repeater

802.11 Mode: 802.11b+g

Choose Channel ID: Channel-06 2437MHz

RTS/CTS Threshold: 2346 (256 ~ 2346)

Fragmentation Threshold: 2346 (256 ~ 2346)

Output Power: 100%

Enable WDS Security

#	Active	Remote Bridge MAC Address	PSK
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	

Enable Breathing LED

Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)

Apply
Reset

The following table describes the bridge labels in this screen.

Table 17 Wireless: Bridge/Repeater

LABEL	DESCRIPTIONS
Operating Mode	Select Bridge/Repeater in this field.
802.11 mode	Select 802.11b Only to allow only IEEE 802.11b compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. Select 802.11g Only to allow only IEEE 802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. Select 802.11b+g to allow both IEEE802.11b and IEEE802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. The transmission rate of your ZyXEL Device might be reduced. Select 802.11a to allow only IEEE 802.11a compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.
Choose Channel ID	Set the operating frequency/channel depending on your particular region. To manually set the ZyXEL Device to use a channel, select a channel from the drop-down list box. Click MAINTENANCE and then the Channel Usage tab to open the Channel Usage screen to make sure the channel is not already used by another AP or independent peer-to-peer wireless network. To have the ZyXEL Device automatically select a channel, click Scan instead.
RTS/CTS Threshold	(Request To Send) The threshold (number of bytes) for enabling RTS/CTS handshake. Data with its frame size larger than this value will perform the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to be larger than the maximum MSDU (MAC service data unit) size turns off the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to zero turns on the RTS/CTS handshake. Enter a value between 256 and 2346 .
Fragmentation Threshold	The threshold (number of bytes) for the fragmentation boundary for directed messages. It is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent. Enter a value between 256 and 2346 .
Output Power	Set the output power of the ZyXEL Device in this field. If there is a high density of APs in an area, decrease the output power of the ZyXEL Device to reduce interference with other APs. Select from 100% (Full Power) , 50% , 25% , 12.5% and Minimum . See the product specifications for more information on your ZyXEL Device's output power.
Enable WDS Security	Select the check box to enable WDS on your ZyXEL Device. A Wireless Distribution System (WDS) is a wireless connection between two or more APs. If you do not select the check box, traffic between APs is not encrypted. When you select the check box, you are prompted to type a Pre-Shared Key (PSK). The ZyXEL Device uses TKIP to encrypt traffic on the WDS between APs. Note: Other APs must use the same encryption method to enable WDS.
#	This is the index number of the bridge connection.
Active	Select the check box to enable the bridge connection. Otherwise, clear the check box to disable it.
Remote Bridge MAC Address	Type the MAC address of the peer device in a valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs, for example, 12:34:56:78:9a:bc.
PSK	Type a pre-shared key from 8 to 63 case-sensitive ASCII characters (including spaces and symbols).

See [Table 16 on page 75](#) for information on the other labels in this screen.

5.6.3 AP+Bridge Mode

Select **AP+Bridge** as the **Operating Mode** in the **WIRELESS > Wireless** screen to have the ZyXEL Device function as a bridge and access point simultaneously. See the section on applications for more information.

Figure 43 Wireless: AP+Bridge

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Operating Mode AP+Bridge					
802.11 Mode 802.11b+g					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Super Mode					
Choose Channel ID Channel-06 2437MHz					
RTS/CTS Threshold 2346 (256 ~ 2346)					
Fragmentation Threshold 2346 (256 ~ 2346)					
Output Power 100%					
SSID Profile SSID03					
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable WDS Security					
#	Active	Remote Bridge	MAC Address	PSK	
1	<input type="checkbox"/>		00:00:00:00:00:00		
2	<input type="checkbox"/>		00:00:00:00:00:00		
3	<input type="checkbox"/>		00:00:00:00:00:00		
4	<input type="checkbox"/>		00:00:00:00:00:00		
5	<input type="checkbox"/>		00:00:00:00:00:00		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Breathing LED					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)					
<input type="checkbox"/> Roaming Active					
Apply Reset					

See the tables describing the fields in the **Access Point** and **Bridge/Repeater** operating modes for descriptions of the fields in this screen.

5.6.4 MBSSID Mode

Select **MBSSID** as the **Operating Mode** to display the screen. Refer to [Chapter 7 on page 97](#) for configuration and detailed information. See [Chapter 6 on page 81](#) for details on the security settings.

Wireless Security Configuration

This chapter describes how to use the **Security** and **RADIUS** screens to configure wireless security on your ZyXEL Device.

6.1 Wireless Security Overview

Wireless security is vital to your network to protect wireless communication between wireless stations, access points and the wired network.

Wireless security methods available on the ZyXEL Device are data encryption, wireless client authentication, restricting access by MAC address and hiding the ZyXEL Device's identity.

6.1.1 Encryption

- Use WPA(2) security if you have WPA(2)-aware wireless clients and a RADIUS server. WPA has user authentication and improved data encryption over WEP.
- Use WPA(2)-PSK if you have WPA(2)-aware wireless clients but no RADIUS server.
- If you don't have WPA(2)-aware wireless clients, then use WEP key encrypting. A higher bit key offers better security at a throughput trade-off. You can manually enter 64-bit, 128-bit or 152-bit WEP keys.

6.1.2 Restricted Access

The **MAC Filter** screen allows you to configure the AP to give exclusive access to devices (**Allow Association**) or exclude them from accessing the AP (**Deny Association**).

6.1.3 Hide Identity

If you hide the SSID, then the ZyXEL Device cannot be seen when a wireless client scans for local APs. The trade-off for the extra security of "hiding" the ZyXEL Device may be inconvenience for some valid WLAN clients.

6.1.4 WEP Encryption

WEP encryption scrambles the data transmitted between the wireless stations and the access points to keep network communications private. It encrypts unicast and multicast communications in a network. Both the wireless stations and the access points must use the same WEP key.

Your ZyXEL Device allows you to configure up to four 64-bit, 128-bit or 152-bit WEP keys but only one key can be enabled at any one time.

6.2 802.1x Overview

The IEEE 802.1x standard outlines enhanced security methods for both the authentication of wireless stations and encryption key management. Authentication can be done using an external RADIUS server.

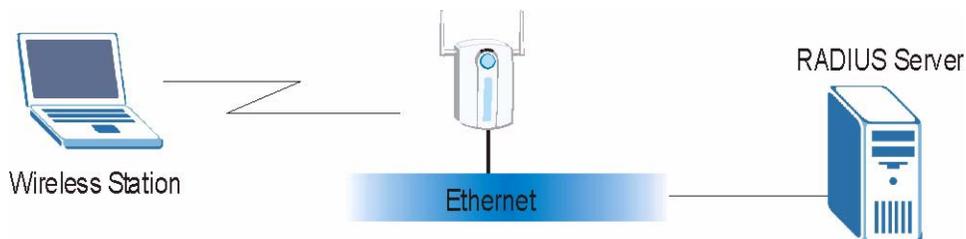
6.3 EAP Authentication Overview

EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) is an authentication protocol that runs on top of the IEEE802.1x transport mechanism in order to support multiple types of user authentication. By using EAP to interact with an EAP-compatible RADIUS server, the access point helps a wireless station and a RADIUS server perform authentication.

The type of authentication you use depends on the RADIUS server or the AP. The ZyXEL Device supports EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS, EAP-MD5 and PEAP with RADIUS. Refer to the Types of EAP Authentication appendix for descriptions on the common types.

The following figure shows an overview of authentication when you specify a RADIUS server on your access point.

Figure 44 EAP Authentication



The details below provide a general description of how IEEE 802.1x EAP authentication works. For an example list of EAP-MD5 authentication steps, see the IEEE 802.1x appendix.

- 1 The wireless station sends a “start” message to the ZyXEL Device.
- 2 The ZyXEL Device sends a “request identity” message to the wireless station for identity information.
- 3 The wireless station replies with identity information, including username and password.
- 4 The RADIUS server checks the user information against its user profile database and determines whether or not to authenticate the wireless station.

6.4 Introduction to WPA

Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) is a subset of the IEEE 802.11i standard. WPA 2 (IEEE 802.11i) is a wireless security standard that defines stronger encryption, authentication and key management than WPA.

Key differences between WPA(2) and WEP are improved data encryption and user authentication.

6.4.1 User Authentication

WPA or WPA2 applies IEEE 802.1x and Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) to authenticate wireless clients using an external RADIUS database.

If both an AP and the wireless clients support WPA2 and you have an external RADIUS server, use WPA2 for stronger data encryption. If you don't have an external RADIUS server, you should use WPA2-PSK (WPA2 -Pre-Shared Key), which only requires a single (identical) password entered into each access point, wireless gateway and wireless client. As long as the passwords match, a wireless client will be granted access to a WLAN.

If the AP or the wireless clients do not support WPA2, use WPA or WPA-PSK depending on whether you have an external RADIUS server or not.

Select WEP only when the AP and/or wireless clients do not support WPA or WPA2. WEP is less secure than WPA or WPA2.

6.4.2 Encryption

Both WPA and WPA2 improve data encryption by using Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP), Message Integrity Check (MIC) and IEEE 802.1x. In addition to TKIP, WPA2 also uses Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) in the Counter mode with Cipher block chaining Message authentication code Protocol (CCMP) to offer stronger encryption.

Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) uses 128-bit keys that are dynamically generated and distributed by the authentication server. It includes a per-packet key mixing function, a Message Integrity Check (MIC) named Michael, an extended initialization vector (IV) with sequencing rules, and a re-keying mechanism.

TKIP regularly changes and rotates the encryption keys so that the same encryption key is never used twice. The RADIUS server distributes a Pairwise Master Key (PMK) key to the AP that then sets up a key hierarchy and management system, using the pair-wise key to dynamically generate unique data encryption keys to encrypt every data packet that is wirelessly communicated between the AP and the wireless clients. This all happens in the background automatically.

WPA2 AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) is a block cipher that uses a 256-bit mathematical algorithm called Rijndael.

The Message Integrity Check (MIC) is designed to prevent an attacker from capturing data packets, altering them and resending them. The MIC provides a strong mathematical function in which the receiver and the transmitter each compute and then compare the MIC. If they do not match, it is assumed that the data has been tampered with and the packet is dropped.

By generating unique data encryption keys for every data packet and by creating an integrity checking mechanism (MIC), TKIP makes it much more difficult to decode data on a Wi-Fi network than WEP, making it difficult for an intruder to break into the network.

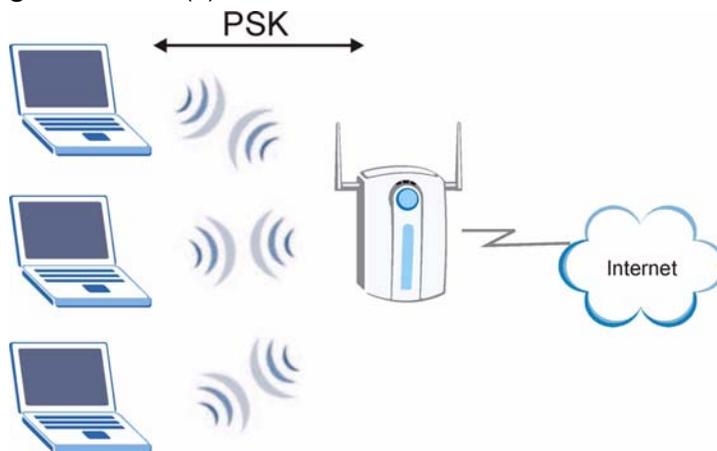
The encryption mechanisms used for WPA and WPA-PSK are the same. The only difference between the two is that WPA-PSK uses a simple common password, instead of user-specific credentials. The common-password approach makes WPA-PSK susceptible to brute-force password-guessing attacks but it's still an improvement over WEP as it employs an easier-to-use, consistent, single, alphanumeric password.

6.4.3 WPA(2)-PSK Application Example

A WPA(2)-PSK application looks as follows.

- 1 First enter identical passwords into the AP and all wireless clients. The Pre-Shared Key (PSK) must consist of between 8 and 63 ASCII characters (including spaces and symbols).
- 2 The AP checks each wireless client's password and (only) allows it to join the network if the password matches.
- 3 The AP derives and distributes keys to the wireless clients.
- 4 The AP and wireless clients use the TKIP or AES encryption process to encrypt data exchanged between them.

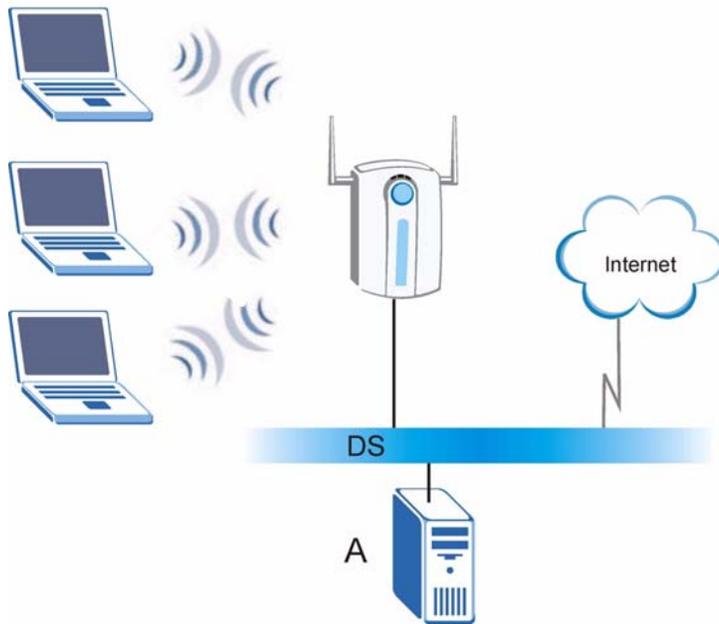
Figure 45 WPA(2)-PSK Authentication



6.5 WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example

You need the IP address of the RADIUS server, its port number (default is 1812), and the RADIUS shared secret. A WPA(2) application example with an external RADIUS server looks as follows. “A” is the RADIUS server. “DS” is the distribution system.

- 1 The AP passes the wireless client's authentication request to the RADIUS server.
- 2 The RADIUS server then checks the user's identification against its database and grants or denies network access accordingly.
- 3 The RADIUS server distributes a Pairwise Master Key (PMK) key to the AP that then sets up a key hierarchy and management system, using the pair-wise key to dynamically generate unique data encryption keys to encrypt every data packet that is wirelessly communicated between the AP and the wireless clients.

Figure 46 WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example

6.6 Security Modes

The following table describes the security modes you can configure.

Table 18 Security Modes

SECURITY MODE	DESCRIPTION
None	Select this to have no data encryption.
WEP	Select this to use WEP encryption.
802.1x-Only	Select this to use 802.1x authentication with no data encryption.
802.1x-Static64	Select this to use 802.1x authentication with a static 64bit WEP key and an authentication server.
802.1x-Static128	Select this to use 802.1x authentication with a static 128bit WEP key and an authentication server.
WPA	Select this to use WPA.
WPA-PSK	Select this to use WPA with a pre-shared key.
WPA2	Select this to use WPA2.
WPA2-MIX	Select this to use either WPA2 or WPA depending on which security mode the wireless client uses.
WPA2-PSK	Select this to use WPA2 with a pre-shared key.
WPA2-PSK-MIX	Select this to use either WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK depending on which security mode the wireless client uses.

6.7 Wireless Client WPA Supplicants

A wireless client supplicant is the software that runs on an operating system instructing the wireless client how to use WPA. At the time of writing, the most widely available supplicant is the WPA patch for Windows XP, Funk Software's Odyssey client, and Meetinghouse Data Communications' AEGIS client.

The Windows XP patch is a free download that adds WPA capability to Windows XP's built-in "Zero Configuration" wireless client. However, you must run Windows XP to use it.

The Funk Software's Odyssey client is bundled free (at the time of writing) with the client wireless adaptor(s).

6.8 Wireless Security Effectiveness

The following figure shows the relative effectiveness of these wireless security methods available on your ZyXEL Device. EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) is used for authentication and utilizes static WEP key exchange. It requires interaction with a RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) server either on the WAN or your LAN to provide authentication service for wireless stations.

Table 19 Wireless Security Levels

SECURITY LEVEL	SECURITY TYPE
↓ Most Secure	Unique SSID (Default)
	Unique SSID with Hide SSID Enabled
	MAC Address Filtering
	WEP Encryption
	IEEE802.1x EAP with RADIUS Server Authentication
	Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA)
	WPA2

If you do not enable any wireless security on your ZyXEL Device, your network is accessible to any wireless networking device within range.

6.9 Configuring Security



The following screens are configurable only in Access Point, AP+Bridge and MBSSID operating modes only.

Use the Security screen to create secure profiles. A security profile is a group of configuration settings which can be assigned to an SSID profile in the **SSID** configuration screen.

You can configure up to 16 security profiles.

To change your ZyXEL Device's wireless security settings, click **WIRELESS > Security**.

Figure 47 Security

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter																																																																				
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Index</th> <th>Profile Name</th> <th>Security Mode</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td><input type="radio"/></td><td>1</td><td>security01</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td><input checked="" type="radio"/></td><td>2</td><td>security02</td><td>WPA2</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="radio"/></td><td>3</td><td>security03</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="radio"/></td><td>4</td><td>security04</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="radio"/></td><td>5</td><td>security05</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="radio"/></td><td>6</td><td>security06</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="radio"/></td><td>7</td><td>security07</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="radio"/></td><td>8</td><td>security08</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="radio"/></td><td>9</td><td>security09</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="radio"/></td><td>10</td><td>security10</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="radio"/></td><td>11</td><td>security11</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="radio"/></td><td>12</td><td>security12</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="radio"/></td><td>13</td><td>security13</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="radio"/></td><td>14</td><td>security14</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="radio"/></td><td>15</td><td>security15</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td><input type="radio"/></td><td>16</td><td>security16</td><td>None</td></tr> </tbody> </table>		Index	Profile Name	Security Mode	<input type="radio"/>	1	security01	None	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	2	security02	WPA2	<input type="radio"/>	3	security03	None	<input type="radio"/>	4	security04	None	<input type="radio"/>	5	security05	None	<input type="radio"/>	6	security06	None	<input type="radio"/>	7	security07	None	<input type="radio"/>	8	security08	None	<input type="radio"/>	9	security09	None	<input type="radio"/>	10	security10	None	<input type="radio"/>	11	security11	None	<input type="radio"/>	12	security12	None	<input type="radio"/>	13	security13	None	<input type="radio"/>	14	security14	None	<input type="radio"/>	15	security15	None	<input type="radio"/>	16	security16	None			
	Index	Profile Name	Security Mode																																																																						
<input type="radio"/>	1	security01	None																																																																						
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	2	security02	WPA2																																																																						
<input type="radio"/>	3	security03	None																																																																						
<input type="radio"/>	4	security04	None																																																																						
<input type="radio"/>	5	security05	None																																																																						
<input type="radio"/>	6	security06	None																																																																						
<input type="radio"/>	7	security07	None																																																																						
<input type="radio"/>	8	security08	None																																																																						
<input type="radio"/>	9	security09	None																																																																						
<input type="radio"/>	10	security10	None																																																																						
<input type="radio"/>	11	security11	None																																																																						
<input type="radio"/>	12	security12	None																																																																						
<input type="radio"/>	13	security13	None																																																																						
<input type="radio"/>	14	security14	None																																																																						
<input type="radio"/>	15	security15	None																																																																						
<input type="radio"/>	16	security16	None																																																																						
<input type="button" value="Edit"/>																																																																									

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 20 Security

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number of the security profile address.
Profile Name	This field displays a name given to a security profile in the Security configuration screen.
Security Mode	This field displays the security mode this security profile uses.
Edit	Select an entry from the list and click Edit to configure security settings for that profile.

The next screen varies according to the **Security Mode** you select.

6.9.1 Security: WEP

Select **WEP** in the **Security Mode** field to display the following screen.

Figure 48 Security: WEP

Wireless SSID **Security** RADIUS Layer-2 Isolation MAC Filter

Name : security02

Security Mode : WEP

WEP Encryption : 64-bit WEP

Authentication Method : Auto

64-bit WEP: Enter 5 ASCII characters or 10 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4).
 128-bit WEP: Enter 13 ASCII characters or 26 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4).
 152-bit WEP: Enter 16 ASCII characters or 32 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4).

ASCII Hex

Key 1
 Key 2
 Key 3
 Key 4

Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 21 Security: WEP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Type a name to identify this security profile.
Security Mode	Choose WEP in this field.
WEP Encryption	Select Disable to allow wireless stations to communicate with the access points without any data encryption. Select 64-bit WEP , 128-bit WEP or 152-bit WEP to enable data encryption.
Authentication Method	Select Auto , Open System or Shared Key from the drop-down list box. The default setting is Auto .
ASCII	Select this option to enter ASCII characters as the WEP keys.
Hex	Select this option to enter hexadecimal characters as the WEP keys. The preceding "0x" is entered automatically.
Key 1 to Key 4	The WEP keys are used to encrypt data. Both the ZyXEL Device and the wireless stations must use the same WEP key for data transmission. If you chose 64-bit WEP , then enter any 5 ASCII characters or 10 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F"). If you chose 128-bit WEP , then enter 13 ASCII characters or 26 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F"). If you chose 152-bit WEP , then enter 16 ASCII characters or 32 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F"). You must configure all four keys, but only one key can be activated at any one time. The default key is key 1.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

6.9.2 Security: 802.1x Only

Select **802.1x Only** in the **Security Mode** field to display the following screen.

Figure 49 Security: 802.1x Only

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<p>Name : <input type="text" value="security02"/></p> <p>Security Mode : <input type="text" value="8021x-Only"/></p> <p>ReAuthentication Timer : <input type="text" value="1800"/> (in seconds)</p> <p>Idle Timeout : <input type="text" value="3600"/> (in seconds)</p> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/> </p>					

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 22 Security: 802.1x Only

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Type a name to identify this security profile.
Security Mode	Choose 802.1x Only in this field.
ReAuthentication Timer	Specify how often wireless stations have to resend user names and passwords in order to stay connected. Enter a time interval between 10 and 9999 seconds. The default time interval is 1800 seconds (30 minutes). Note: If wireless station authentication is done using a RADIUS server, the reauthentication timer on the RADIUS server has priority.
Idle Timeout	The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a wireless station from the wireless network after a period of inactivity. The wireless station needs to send the username and password again before it can use the wireless network again. Some wireless clients may prompt users for a username and password; other clients may use saved login credentials. In either case, there is usually a short delay while the wireless client logs in to the wireless network again. This value is usually smaller when the wireless network is keeping track of how much time each wireless station is connected to the wireless network (for example, using an authentication server). If the wireless network is not keeping track of this information, you can usually set this value higher to reduce the number of delays caused by logging in again. The default time interval is 3600 seconds (or 1 hour).
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

6.9.3 Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit

Select **802.1x Static 64** or **802.1x Static 128** in the **Security Mode** field to display the following screen.

Figure 50 Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<p>Name : <input type="text" value="security02"/></p> <p>Security Mode : <input type="text" value="8021x-Static128"/></p> <p>Enter 13 ASCII characters or 26 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4).</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> ASCII <input type="radio"/> Hex</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Key 1 <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Key 2 <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Key 3 <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Key 4 <input type="text"/></p> <p>ReAuthentication Timer : <input type="text" value="1800"/> (in seconds)</p> <p>Idle Timeout : <input type="text" value="3600"/> (in seconds)</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/></p>					

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 23 Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Type a name to identify this security profile.
Security Mode	Choose 802.1x Static 64 or 802.1x Static 128 in this field.
ASCII	Select this option to enter ASCII characters as the WEP keys.
Hex	Select this option to enter hexadecimal characters as the WEP keys. The preceding "0x" is entered automatically.
Key 1 to Key 4	<p>If you chose 802.1x Static 64, then enter any 5 characters (ASCII string) or 10 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") preceded by 0x for each key.</p> <p>If you chose 802.1x Static 128-bit, then enter 13 characters (ASCII string) or 26 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") preceded by 0x for each key.</p> <p>There are four data encryption keys to secure your data from eavesdropping by unauthorized wireless users. The values for the keys must be set up exactly the same on the access points as they are on the wireless stations.</p> <p>The preceding "0x" is entered automatically. You must configure all four keys, but only one key can be activated at any one time. The default key is key 1.</p>
ReAuthentication Timer	<p>Specify how often wireless stations have to resend user names and passwords in order to stay connected.</p> <p>Enter a time interval between 10 and 9999 seconds. The default time interval is 1800 seconds (30 minutes).</p> <p>Note: If wireless station authentication is done using a RADIUS server, the reauthentication timer on the RADIUS server has priority.</p>

Table 23 Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Idle Timeout	The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a wireless station from the wireless network after a period of inactivity. The wireless station needs to send the username and password again before it can use the wireless network again. Some wireless clients may prompt users for a username and password; other clients may use saved login credentials. In either case, there is usually a short delay while the wireless client logs in to the wireless network again. This value is usually smaller when the wireless network is keeping track of how much time each wireless station is connected to the wireless network (for example, using an authentication server). If the wireless network is not keeping track of this information, you can usually set this value higher to reduce the number of delays caused by logging in again. The default time interval is 3600 seconds (or 1 hour).
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

6.9.4 Security: WPA

Select **WPA** in the **Security Mode** field to display the following screen.

Figure 51 Security: WPA

The screenshot shows a configuration window for WPA security. It features a tabbed interface with 'Security' selected. The 'Name' field contains 'security02'. The 'Security Mode' dropdown is set to 'WPA'. Three timer fields are present: 'ReAuthentication Timer' at 1800, 'Idle Timeout' at 3600, and 'Group Key Update Timer' at 1800, all with '(in seconds)' labels. 'Apply' and 'Reset' buttons are located at the bottom center.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 24 Security: WPA

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Type a name to identify this security profile.
Security Mode	Choose WPA in this field.
ReAuthentication Timer	Specify how often wireless stations have to resend user names and passwords in order to stay connected. Enter a time interval between 10 and 9999 seconds. The default time interval is 1800 seconds (30 minutes). Note: If wireless station authentication is done using a RADIUS server, the reauthentication timer on the RADIUS server has priority.

Table 24 Security: WPA

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Idle Timeout	The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a wireless station from the wireless network after a period of inactivity. The wireless station needs to send the username and password again before it can use the wireless network again. Some wireless clients may prompt users for a username and password; other clients may use saved login credentials. In either case, there is usually a short delay while the wireless client logs in to the wireless network again. This value is usually smaller when the wireless network is keeping track of how much time each wireless station is connected to the wireless network (for example, using an authentication server). If the wireless network is not keeping track of this information, you can usually set this value higher to reduce the number of delays caused by logging in again. The default time interval is 3600 seconds (or 1 hour).
Group Key Update Timer	The Group Key Update Timer is the rate at which the AP sends a new group key out to all clients. The re-keying process is the WPA equivalent of automatically changing the group key for an AP and all stations in a WLAN on a periodic basis. Setting of the Group Key Update Timer is also supported in WPA-PSK mode. The ZyXEL Device default is 1800 seconds (30 minutes).
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

6.9.5 Security: WPA2 or WPA2-MIX

Select **WPA2** or **WPA2-MIX** in the **Security Mode** field to display the following screen.

Figure 52 Security:WPA2 or WPA2-MIX

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<p>Name : security02</p> <p>Security Mode : WPA2-MIX</p> <p>ReAuthentication Timer : 1800 (in seconds)</p> <p>Idle Timeout : 3600 (in seconds)</p> <p>Group Key Update Timer : 1800 (in seconds)</p> <p>PMK Cache : Enable</p> <p>Pre-Authentication : Disable</p> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/> </p>					

The following table describes the labels not previously discussed

Table 25 Security: WPA2 or WPA2-MIX

LABEL	DESCRIPTIONS
Name	Type a name to identify this security profile.
Security Mode	Choose WPA2 or WPA2-MIX in this field.

Table 25 Security: WPA2 or WPA2-MIX

LABEL	DESCRIPTIONS
ReAuthentication Timer	<p>Specify how often wireless stations have to resend usernames and passwords in order to stay connected.</p> <p>Enter a time interval between 10 and 9999 seconds. The default time interval is 1800 seconds (30 minutes).</p> <p>Note: If wireless station authentication is done using a RADIUS server, the reauthentication timer on the RADIUS server has priority.</p>
Idle Timeout	<p>The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a wireless station from the wireless network after a period of inactivity. The wireless station needs to send the username and password again before it can use the wireless network again. Some wireless clients may prompt users for a username and password; other clients may use saved login credentials. In either case, there is usually a short delay while the wireless client logs in to the wireless network again.</p> <p>This value is usually smaller when the wireless network is keeping track of how much time each wireless station is connected to the wireless network (for example, using an authentication server). If the wireless network is not keeping track of this information, you can usually set this value higher to reduce the number of delays caused by logging in again.</p> <p>The default time interval is 3600 seconds (or 1 hour).</p>
Group Key Update Timer	<p>The Group Key Update Timer is the rate at which the AP sends a new group key out to all clients. The re-keying process is the WPA equivalent of automatically changing the group key for an AP and all stations in a WLAN on a periodic basis. Setting of the Group Key Update Timer is also supported in WPA-PSK mode. The ZyXEL Device's default is 1800 seconds (30 minutes).</p>
PMK Cache	<p>When a wireless client moves from one AP's coverage area to another, it performs an authentication procedure (exchanging security information) with the new AP. Instead of re-authenticating a client each time it returns to the AP's coverage area, which can cause delays to time-sensitive applications, the AP and the client can store (or "cache") and use information about their previous authentication. Select Enable to allow PMK caching, or Disable to switch this feature off.</p>
Pre-Authentication	<p>Pre-authentication allows a wireless client to perform authentication with a different AP from the one to which it is currently connected, before moving into the new AP's coverage area. This speeds up roaming. Select Enable to allow pre-authentication, or Disable to switch it off.</p>
Apply	<p>Click Apply to save your changes.</p>
Reset	<p>Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.</p>

6.9.6 Security: WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK, WPA2-PSK-MIX

Select **WPA-PSK**, **WPA2-PSK** or **WPA2-PSK-MIX** in the **Security Mode** field to display the following screen.

Figure 53 Security: WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK or WPA2-PSK-MIX

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<p>Name : <input type="text" value="security02"/></p> <p>Security Mode : <input type="text" value="WPA2-PSK-MIX"/></p> <p>Pre-Shared Key : <input type="text"/></p> <p>ReAuthentication Timer : <input type="text" value="1800"/> (in seconds)</p> <p>Idle Timeout : <input type="text" value="3600"/> (in seconds)</p> <p>Group Key Update Timer : <input type="text" value="1800"/> (in seconds)</p> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/> </p>					

The following table describes the labels not previously discussed

Table 26 Security: WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK or WPA2-PSK-MIX

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Type a name to identify this security profile.
Security Mode	Choose WPA-PSK , WPA2-PSK or WPA2-PSK-MIX in this field.
Pre-Shared Key	The encryption mechanisms used for WPA and WPA-PSK are the same. The only difference between the two is that WPA-PSK uses a simple common password, instead of user-specific credentials. Type a pre-shared key from 8 to 63 case-sensitive ASCII characters (including spaces and symbols).
ReAuthentication Timer	Specify how often wireless stations have to resend usernames and passwords in order to stay connected. Enter a time interval between 10 and 9999 seconds. The default time interval is 1800 seconds (30 minutes). Note: If wireless station authentication is done using a RADIUS server, the reauthentication timer on the RADIUS server has priority.
Idle Timeout	The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a wireless station from the wireless network after a period of inactivity. The wireless station needs to send the username and password again before it can use the wireless network again. Some wireless clients may prompt users for a username and password; other clients may use saved login credentials. In either case, there is usually a short delay while the wireless client logs in to the wireless network again. This value is usually smaller when the wireless network is keeping track of how much time each wireless station is connected to the wireless network (for example, using an authentication server). If the wireless network is not keeping track of this information, you can usually set this value higher to reduce the number of delays caused by logging in again. The default time interval is 3600 seconds (or 1 hour).
Group Key Update Timer	The Group Key Update Timer is the rate at which the AP sends a new group key out to all clients. The re-keying process is the WPA equivalent of automatically changing the group key for an AP and all stations in a WLAN on a periodic basis. Setting of the Group Key Update Timer is also supported in WPA-PSK mode. The ZyXEL Device's default is 1800 seconds (30 minutes).
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

6.10 Introduction to RADIUS

RADIUS is based on a client-server model that supports authentication and accounting, where the access point is the client and the server is the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server handles the following tasks, among others:

- Authentication
Determines the identity of the users.
- Accounting
Keeps track of the client's network activity.

6.11 Configuring RADIUS

Use RADIUS if you want to authenticate wireless users using an external server.

You can configure up to four RADIUS server profiles. Each profile also has one backup authentication server and a backup accounting server. These profiles can be assigned to an SSID profile in the **SSID** configuration screen

To set up your ZyXEL Device's RADIUS server settings, click **WIRELESS > RADIUS**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 54 RADIUS

	Primary	Backup
	<input type="checkbox"/> Active	<input type="checkbox"/> Active
RADIUS Server IP Address	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>
RADIUS Server Port	<input type="text" value="1812"/>	<input type="text" value="1812"/>
Share Secret	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
	<input type="checkbox"/> Active	<input type="checkbox"/> Active
Accounting Server IP Address	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>
Accounting Server Port	<input type="text" value="1813"/>	<input type="text" value="1813"/>
Share Secret	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 27 RADIUS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	Select the RADIUS profile you want to configure from the drop-down list box.
Profile Name	Type a name for the RADIUS profile associated with the Index number above.
Primary	Configure the fields below to have user authentication and accounting through external servers.

Table 27 RADIUS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Backup	If the ZyXEL Device cannot communicate with the Primary accounting server, you can have the ZyXEL Device use a Backup RADIUS server. Make sure the Active check boxes are selected if you want to use backup servers. The ZyXEL Device will attempt to communicate three times before using the Backup servers. Requests can be issued from the client interface to use the backup server. The length of time for each authentication is decided by the wireless client or based on the configuration of the ReAuthentication Timer field in the Security screen.
Active	Select the check box to enable user authentication through an external authentication server.
RADIUS Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of the external authentication server in dotted decimal notation.
RADIUS Server Port	Enter the port number of the external authentication server. The default port number is 1812. You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.
Share Secret	Enter a password (up to 128 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external authentication server and the ZyXEL Device. The key must be the same on the external authentication server and your ZyXEL Device. The key is not sent over the network.
Active	Select the check box to enable user accounting through an external authentication server.
Accounting Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of the external accounting server in dotted decimal notation.
Accounting Server Port	Enter the port number of the external accounting server. The default port number is 1813. You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so with additional information.
Share Secret	Enter a password (up to 128 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external accounting server and the ZyXEL Device. The key must be the same on the external accounting server and your ZyXEL Device. The key is not sent over the network.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

MBSSID and SSID

This chapter describes how to configure and use your ZyXEL Device's MBSSID mode and configure SSID profiles.

7.1 Wireless LAN Infrastructures

See the Wireless LAN chapter for some basic WLAN scenarios and terminology.

7.1.1 MBSSID

Traditionally, you needed to use different APs to configure different Basic Service Sets (BSSs). As well as the cost of buying extra APs, there was also the possibility of channel interference. The ZyXEL Device's MBSSID (Multiple Basic Service Set Identifier) function allows you to use one access point to provide several BSSs simultaneously. You can then assign varying levels of privilege to different SSIDs.

Wireless stations can use different BSSIDs to associate with the same AP.

7.1.2 Notes on Multiple BSS

- A maximum of eight BSSs are allowed on one AP simultaneously.
- You must use different WEP keys for different BSSs. If two stations have different BSSIDs (they are in different BSSs), but have the same WEP keys, they may hear each other's communications (but not communicate with each other).
- MBSSID should not replace but rather be used in conjunction with 802.1x security.

7.1.3 Multiple BSS Example

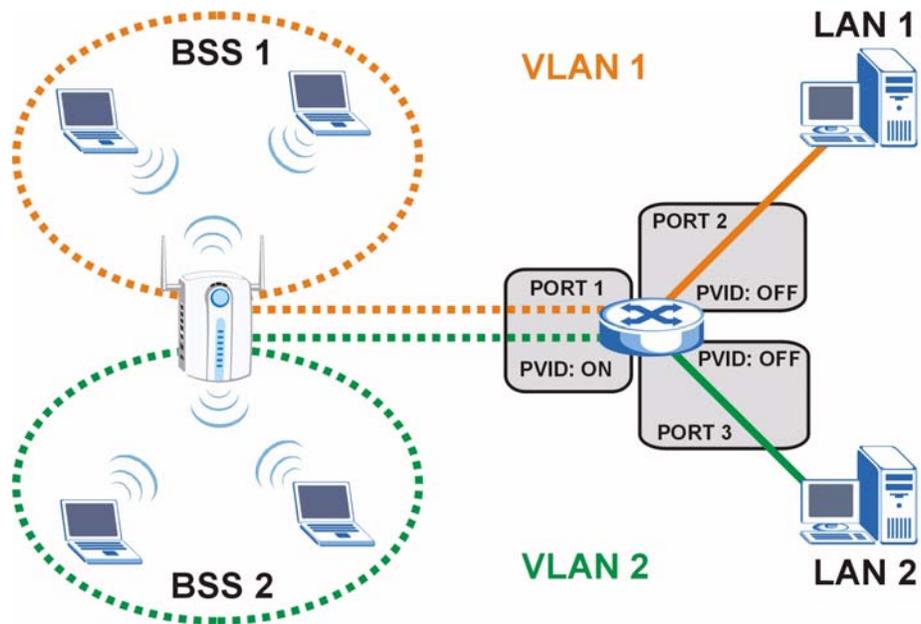
Refer to the applications section for more information.

7.1.4 Multiple BSS with VLAN Example

In this example, VLAN 2 includes the computers in BSS1 and LAN 1. Computers in BSS2 and LAN 2 belong to VLAN 2. Users in BSS1 are limited to accessing the resources on LAN 1 and similarly users in BSS2 may only access resources on LAN 2. VLAN 2 is the management VLAN.

The switch adds PVID (Port VLAN IDentity) tags to incoming frames that don't already have tags (on switch ports where PVID is enabled).

Figure 55 Multiple BSS with VLAN Example



7.1.5 Configuring Multiple BSSs

Click **WIRELESS > Wireless** and select **MBSSID** in the **Operating Mode** drop-down list box to display the screen as shown.

Figure 56 Wireless: Multiple BSS

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter																				
<p>Operating Mode: MBSSID</p> <p>802.11 Mode: 802.11b+g</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Super Mode</p> <p>Choose Channel ID: Channel-06 2437MHz or Scan</p> <p>RTS/CTS Threshold: 2346 (256 ~ 2346)</p> <p>Fragmentation Threshold: 2346 (256 ~ 2346)</p> <p>Output Power: 100%</p> <p>Select SSID Profile</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Index</th> <th>Profile</th> <th>Index</th> <th>Profile</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1 <input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>VoIP_SSID</td> <td>5 <input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>SSID03</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 <input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>Guest_SSID</td> <td>6 <input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>SSID03</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 <input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>SSID03</td> <td>7 <input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>SSID03</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 <input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>SSID03</td> <td>8 <input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>SSID03</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Breathing LED</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Roaming Active</p> <p>Apply Reset</p>						Index	Profile	Index	Profile	1 <input type="checkbox"/>	VoIP_SSID	5 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03	2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Guest_SSID	6 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03	3 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03	7 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03	4 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03	8 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03
Index	Profile	Index	Profile																						
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	VoIP_SSID	5 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03																						
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Guest_SSID	6 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03																						
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03	7 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03																						
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03	8 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03																						

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 28 Wireless: Multiple BSS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Operating Mode	Select MBSSID in this field to display the screen as shown
802.11 Mode	Select 802.11b Only to allow only IEEE 802.11b compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. Select 802.11g Only to allow only IEEE 802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. Select 802.11b+g to allow both IEEE802.11b and IEEE802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. The transmission rate of your ZyXEL Device might be reduced. Select 802.11a to allow only IEEE 802.11a compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.
Super Mode	Select this to improve data throughput on the WLAN by enabling fast frame and packet bursting.
Choose Channel ID	Set the operating frequency/channel depending on your particular region. To manually set the ZyXEL Device to use a channel, select a channel from the drop-down list box. Click MAINTENANCE and then the Channel Usage tab to open the Channel Usage screen to make sure the channel is not already used by another AP or independent peer-to-peer wireless network. To have the ZyXEL Device automatically select a channel, click Scan instead.
Scan	Click this button to have the ZyXEL Device automatically select the wireless channel with the lowest interference.
RTS/CTS Threshold	The threshold (number of bytes) for enabling RTS/CTS handshake. Data with a frame size larger than this value will perform the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to be larger than the maximum MSDU (MAC service data unit) size turns off the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to zero turns on the RTS/CTS handshake. Enter a value between 800 and 2346 .
Fragmentation Threshold	The threshold (number of bytes) for the fragmentation boundary for directed messages. It is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent. Enter a value between 256 and 2346 .
Output Power	Set the output power of the ZyXEL Device in this field. If there is a high density of APs in an area, decrease the output power to reduce interference with other APs. Select one of the following 100%(Full Power) , 50% , 25% , 12.5% or Minimum . See the product specifications for more information on your ZyXEL Device's output power.
Select SSID Profile	An SSID profile is the set of parameters relating to one of the ZyXEL Device's BSSs. The SSID (Service Set Identifier) identifies the Service Set with which a wireless station is associated. Wireless stations associating with the access point (AP) must have the same SSID. Note: If you are configuring the ZyXEL Device from a computer connected to the wireless LAN and you change the ZyXEL Device's SSID or security settings, you will lose your wireless connection when you press Apply to confirm. You must then change the wireless settings of your computer to match the ZyXEL Device's new settings.
Index	Select the check box to activate an SSID profile.

Table 28 Wireless: Multiple BSS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile	Select the profile(s) of the SSIDs you want to use in your wireless network. You can have up to eight BSSs running on the ZyXEL Device simultaneously, one of which is always the pre-configured VoIP_SSID profile and another of which is always the pre-configured Guest_SSID profile. Configure SSID profiles in the SSID screen.
Enable Breathing LED	Select this check box to enable the Breathing LED, also known as the ZyAIR LED. The blue ZyAIR LED is on when the ZyXEL Device is on and blinks (or breathes) when data is being transmitted to/from its wireless stations. Clear the check box to turn this LED off even when the ZyXEL Device is on and data is being transmitted/received.
Enable Spanning Tree Control (STP)	(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a bridge to interact with other (R)STP - compliant bridges in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network. Select the check box to activate STP on the ZyXEL Device.
Roaming Active	Roaming allows wireless stations to switch from one access point to another as they move from one coverage area to another. Select this checkbox to enable roaming on the ZyXEL Device if you have two or more ZyXEL Devices on the same subnet. Note: All APs on the same subnet and the wireless stations must have the same SSID to allow roaming.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

7.2 SSID

When the ZyXEL Device is set to Access Point, AP+Bridge or MBSSID mode, you need to choose the SSID profile(s) you want to use in your wireless network (see [Section 5.5 on page 74](#) for more information on operating modes).

Use the **WIRELESS > SSID** screen to see information about the SSID profiles on the ZyXEL Device, and use the **WIRELESS > SSID > Edit** screen to configure the SSID profiles.

7.2.1 The SSID Screen

Click **WIRELESS > SSID** to display the screen as shown.

Figure 57 SSID

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter	
<input type="radio"/>	1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	security01	radius01	VoIP
<input type="radio"/>	2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	3	SSID03	ZyXEL03	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	4	SSID04	ZyXEL04	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	5	SSID05	ZyXEL05	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	6	SSID06	ZyXEL06	security01	radius01	NONE
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	7	SSID07	ZyXEL07	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	8	SSID08	ZyXEL08	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	9	SSID09	ZyXEL09	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	10	SSID10	ZyXEL10	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	11	SSID11	ZyXEL11	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	12	SSID12	ZyXEL12	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	13	SSID13	ZyXEL13	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	14	SSID14	ZyXEL14	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	15	SSID15	ZyXEL15	security01	radius01	NONE
<input type="radio"/>	16	SSID16	ZyXEL16	security01	radius01	NONE

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 29 SSID

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of each SSID profile.
Name	This field displays the identification name of each SSID profile on the ZyXEL Device.
SSID	This field displays the name of the wireless profile on the network. When a wireless client scans for an AP to associate with, this is the name that is broadcast and seen in the wireless client utility.
Security	This field indicates which security profile is currently associated with each SSID profile. See Section 6.9 on page 86 for more information.
RADIUS	This field displays which RADIUS profile is currently associated with each SSID profile, if you have a RADIUS server configured.
QoS	This field displays the Quality of Service setting for this profile.
Edit	Click the radio button next to the profile you want to configure and click Edit to go to the SSID configuration screen.

7.2.2 Configuring SSID

Each SSID profile references the settings configured in the following screens:

- **WIRELESS > Security** (one of the security profiles).
- **WIRELESS > RADIUS** (one of the RADIUS profiles).
- **WIRELESS > MAC Filter** (the MAC filter list, if activated in the SSID profile).
- **WIRELESS > Layer 2 Isolation** (the layer 2 isolation list, if activated in the SSID profile).

- Also, use the **VLAN** screen to set up wireless VLANs based on SSID.

Configure the fields in the above screens to use the settings in an SSID profile.

Select an SSID profile in the **WIRELESS > SSID** screen and click **Edit** to display the following screen.

Figure 58 Configuring SSID

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Name :	SSID03				
SSID :	TA_GTR				
Hide Name(SSID) :	Disable				
Security :	security01				
RADIUS :	radius01				
QoS :	NONE				
L2 Isolation :	Disable				
Intra-BSS Traffic blocking :	Disable				
MAC Filtering :	Disable				
<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/>					

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 30 Configuring SSID

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a name identifying this profile.
SSID	When a wireless client scans for an AP to associate with, this is the name that is broadcast and seen in the wireless client utility.
Hide Name (SSID)	Select Disable if you want the ZyXEL Device to broadcast this SSID (a wireless client scanning for an AP will find this SSID). Alternatively, select Enable to have the ZyXEL Device hide this SSID (a wireless client scanning for an AP will not find this SSID).
Security	Select a security profile to use with this SSID profile. See Section 6.9 on page 86 for more information.
RADIUS	Select a RADIUS profile from the drop-down list box, if you have a RADIUS server configured. If you do not need to use RADIUS authentication, ignore this field. See Section 6.11 on page 95 for more information.

Table 30 Configuring SSID

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
QoS	<p>Select the Quality of Service priority for this BSS's traffic.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In the pre-configured VoIP_SSID profile, the QoS setting is VoIP. This is not user-configurable. The VoIP setting is available only on the VoIP_SSID profile, and provides the highest level of QoS. • If you select WMM from the QoS list, the priority of a data packet depends on the packet's VLAN or DSCP header. See Section 5.3.1 on page 69 for more information on WMM and WMM priorities. If a packet has no WMM value assigned to it, it is assigned the default priority. • If you select ATC from the QoS list, the ZyXEL Device automatically assigns priority based on packet size. See Section 5.3.2 on page 69 for more information on ATC. • If you select ATC+WMM from the QoS list, the ZyXEL Device uses WMM on the wireless network and ATC on the wired network. See Section 5.3.3 on page 70 for more information on ATC+WMM. • If you select WMM_VOICE, WMM_VIDEO, WMM_BEST_EFFORT or WMM_BACKGROUND, the ZyXEL Device applies that QoS setting to all of that SSID's traffic. • If you select NONE, the ZyXEL Device applies no priority to traffic on this SSID. <p>Note: When you configure an SSID profile's QoS settings, the ZyXEL Device applies the same QoS setting to all of the profile's traffic.</p>
L2 Isolation	Select Enable from the drop down list box to activate layer-2 isolation.
Enable MAC Filtering	Select Enable from the drop down list box to activate MAC address filtering.
Intra-BSS Traffic blocking	Select Enable from the drop-down list box to prevent wireless clients in this profile's BSS from communicating with one another.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Other Wireless Configuration

This chapter describes how to configure the **Layer-2 Isolation** and **MAC Filter** screens on your ZyXEL Device.

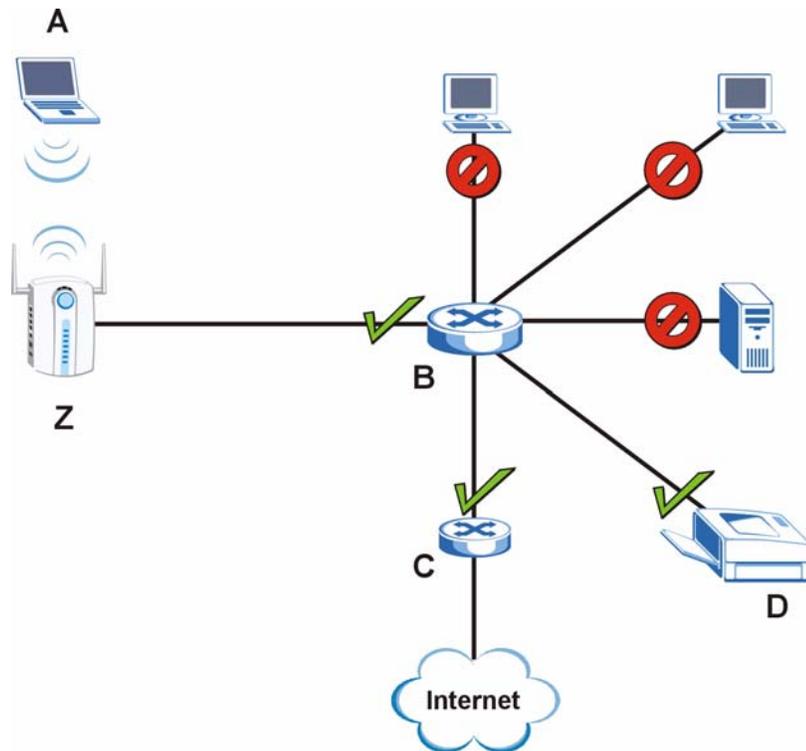
8.1 Layer-2 Isolation Introduction

Layer-2 isolation is used to prevent wireless clients associated with your ZyXEL Device from communicating with other wireless clients, APs, computers or routers in a network.

In the following example, layer-2 isolation is enabled on the ZyXEL Device (**Z**, in the figure) to allow a guest wireless client (**A**) to access the main network router (**B**), the router providing Internet access (**C**), and the network printer (**D**) while preventing the client from accessing other computers and servers on the network. The client can communicate with other wireless clients only if **Intra-BSS Traffic blocking** is disabled.



In the Wireless configuration screen, Intra-BSS Traffic Blocking is activated when you enable layer-2 isolation.

Figure 59 Layer-2 Isolation Application

MAC addresses that are not listed in the Allow devices with these MAC addresses table are blocked from communicating with the ZyXEL Device's wireless clients except for broadcast packets. Layer-2 isolation does not check the traffic between wireless clients that are associated with the same AP. Intra-BSS Traffic allows wireless clients associated with the same AP to communicate with each other.

8.2 Configuring Layer-2 Isolation

If layer-2 isolation is enabled, you need to know the MAC address of the wireless client, AP, computer or router that you want to allow to communicate with the ZyXEL Device's wireless clients.

To configure layer-2 isolation, click **WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation**. The screen appears as shown next.

Figure 60 Layer-2 Isolation Configuration Screen

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Layer-2 Isolation Configuration					
Allow devices with these MAC addresses					
Set	MAC Address	Set	MAC Address		
1	00:00:00:00:00:00	17	00:00:00:00:00:00		
2	00:00:00:00:00:00	18	00:00:00:00:00:00		
3	00:00:00:00:00:00	19	00:00:00:00:00:00		
4	00:00:00:00:00:00	20	00:00:00:00:00:00		
5	00:00:00:00:00:00	21	00:00:00:00:00:00		
6	00:00:00:00:00:00	22	00:00:00:00:00:00		
7	00:00:00:00:00:00	23	00:00:00:00:00:00		
8	00:00:00:00:00:00	24	00:00:00:00:00:00		
9	00:00:00:00:00:00	25	00:00:00:00:00:00		
10	00:00:00:00:00:00	26	00:00:00:00:00:00		
11	00:00:00:00:00:00	27	00:00:00:00:00:00		
12	00:00:00:00:00:00	28	00:00:00:00:00:00		
13	00:00:00:00:00:00	29	00:00:00:00:00:00		
14	00:00:00:00:00:00	30	00:00:00:00:00:00		
15	00:00:00:00:00:00	31	00:00:00:00:00:00		
16	00:00:00:00:00:00	32	00:00:00:00:00:00		
<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/>					

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 31 Layer-2 Isolation Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Allow devices with these MAC addresses	These are the MAC address of a wireless client, AP, computer or router. A wireless client associated with the ZyXEL Device can communicate with another wireless client, AP, computer or router only if the MAC addresses of those devices are listed in this table.
Set	This is the index number of the MAC address.
MAC Address	Type the MAC addresses of the wireless client, AP, computer or router that you want to allow the associated wireless clients to have access to in these address fields. Type the MAC address in a valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs, for example, 12:34:56:78:9a:bc.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

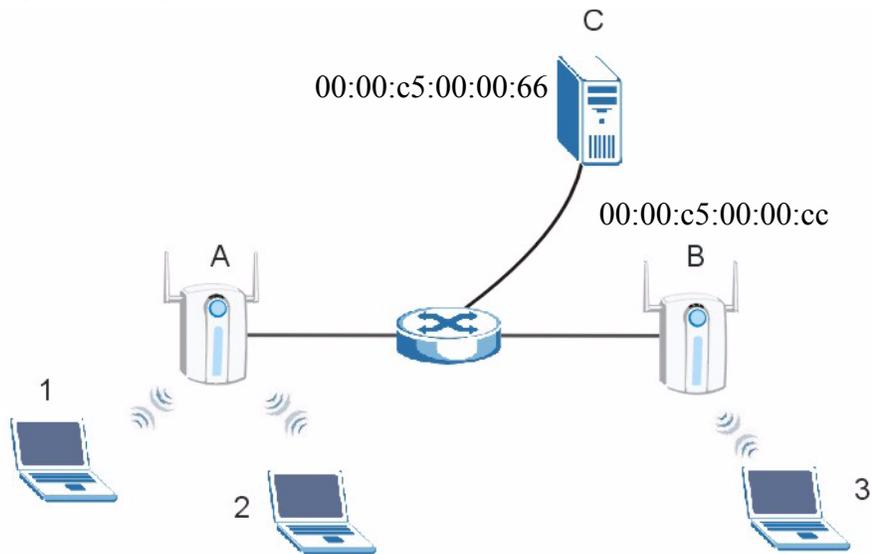
8.2.1 Layer-2 Isolation Examples

The following section shows you example layer-2 isolation configurations on the ZyXEL Device (A).



When configuring, remember to enable layer-2 isolation in the WIRELESS > SSID > Edit screen of the relevant SSID profile.

Figure 61 Layer-2 Isolation Example



8.2.1.1 Layer-2 Isolation Example 1

In the following example wireless clients 1 and 2 can communicate with C, but not B or 3.

- Enter C's MAC address in the **Allow devices with these MAC addresses** field.

Figure 62 Layer-2 Isolation Example 1

Set	MAC Address	Set	MAC Address
1	00:00:c5:00:00:66	17	00:00:00:00:00:00
2	00:00:00:00:00:00	18	00:00:00:00:00:00
14	00:00:00:00:00:00	30	00:00:00:00:00:00
15	00:00:00:00:00:00	31	00:00:00:00:00:00
16	00:00:00:00:00:00	32	00:00:00:00:00:00

Apply Reset

8.2.1.2 Layer-2 Isolation Example 2

In the following example wireless clients 1 and 2 can communicate with B and C but not 3.

- Configure more than one MAC address. Enter the server's and your ZyXEL Device's MAC addresses in the **Allow devices with these MAC addresses** fields.

Figure 63 Layer-2 Isolation Example 2

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter	Roaming	Local User Database
Layer-2 Isolation Configuration							
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Layer-2 Isolation							
Allow devices with these MAC addresses							
Set	MAC Address	Set	MAC Address	Set	MAC Address	Set	MAC Address
1	00:00:c5:00:00:66	17	00:00:00:00:00:00	1	00:00:c5:00:00:66	17	00:00:00:00:00:00
2	00:00:c5:00:00:cc	18	00:00:00:00:00:00	2	00:00:c5:00:00:cc	18	00:00:00:00:00:00
3	00:00:00:00:00:00	19	00:00:00:00:00:00	3	00:00:00:00:00:00	19	00:00:00:00:00:00
4	00:00:00:00:00:00	20	00:00:00:00:00:00	4	00:00:00:00:00:00	20	00:00:00:00:00:00
5	00:00:00:00:00:00	21	00:00:00:00:00:00	5	00:00:00:00:00:00	21	00:00:00:00:00:00
6	00:00:00:00:00:00	22	00:00:00:00:00:00	6	00:00:00:00:00:00	22	00:00:00:00:00:00
7	00:00:00:00:00:00	23	00:00:00:00:00:00	7	00:00:00:00:00:00	23	00:00:00:00:00:00
8	00:00:00:00:00:00	24	00:00:00:00:00:00	8	00:00:00:00:00:00	24	00:00:00:00:00:00
9	00:00:00:00:00:00	25	00:00:00:00:00:00	9	00:00:00:00:00:00	25	00:00:00:00:00:00
10	00:00:00:00:00:00	26	00:00:00:00:00:00	10	00:00:00:00:00:00	26	00:00:00:00:00:00
11	00:00:00:00:00:00	27	00:00:00:00:00:00	11	00:00:00:00:00:00	27	00:00:00:00:00:00
12	00:00:00:00:00:00	28	00:00:00:00:00:00	12	00:00:00:00:00:00	28	00:00:00:00:00:00
13	00:00:00:00:00:00	29	00:00:00:00:00:00	13	00:00:00:00:00:00	29	00:00:00:00:00:00
14	00:00:00:00:00:00	30	00:00:00:00:00:00	14	00:00:00:00:00:00	30	00:00:00:00:00:00
15	00:00:00:00:00:00	31	00:00:00:00:00:00	15	00:00:00:00:00:00	31	00:00:00:00:00:00
16	00:00:00:00:00:00	32	00:00:00:00:00:00	16	00:00:00:00:00:00	32	00:00:00:00:00:00

8.3 Configuring MAC Filter

The MAC filter screen allows you to configure the ZyXEL Device to give exclusive access to up to 32 devices (Allow Association) or exclude up to 32 devices from accessing the ZyXEL Device (Deny Association).

Every Ethernet device has a unique MAC (Media Access Control) address. The MAC address is assigned at the factory and consists of six pairs of hexadecimal characters, for example, 00:A0:C5:00:00:02. You need to know the MAC address of each device to configure this screen.

To change your ZyXEL Device's MAC filter settings, click **WIRELESS > MAC Filter**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 64 MAC Address Filter

MAC Address Filter

Filter Action: Allow Association

Set	MAC Address	Set	MAC Address
1	00:00:00:00:00:00	17	00:00:00:00:00:00
2	00:00:00:00:00:00	18	00:00:00:00:00:00
3	00:00:00:00:00:00	19	00:00:00:00:00:00
4	00:00:00:00:00:00	20	00:00:00:00:00:00
5	00:00:00:00:00:00	21	00:00:00:00:00:00
6	00:00:00:00:00:00	22	00:00:00:00:00:00
7	00:00:00:00:00:00	23	00:00:00:00:00:00
8	00:00:00:00:00:00	24	00:00:00:00:00:00
9	00:00:00:00:00:00	25	00:00:00:00:00:00
10	00:00:00:00:00:00	26	00:00:00:00:00:00
11	00:00:00:00:00:00	27	00:00:00:00:00:00
12	00:00:00:00:00:00	28	00:00:00:00:00:00
13	00:00:00:00:00:00	29	00:00:00:00:00:00
14	00:00:00:00:00:00	30	00:00:00:00:00:00
15	00:00:00:00:00:00	31	00:00:00:00:00:00
16	00:00:00:00:00:00	32	00:00:00:00:00:00

Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 32 MAC Address Filter

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Filter Action	Define the filter action for the list of MAC addresses in the MAC address filter table. Select Deny Association to block access to the router. MAC addresses not listed will be allowed to access the router. Select Allow Association to permit access to the router. MAC addresses not listed will be denied access to the router.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC addresses (in XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX format) of the wireless station to be allowed or denied access to the ZyXEL Device.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.



To activate MAC filtering on a profile, select Enable from the Enable MAC Filtering drop-down list box in the WIRELESS > SSID > Edit screen and click Apply.

8.4 Configuring Roaming

A wireless station is a device with an IEEE 802.11a/b/g compliant wireless interface. An access point (AP) acts as a bridge between the wireless and wired networks. An AP creates its own wireless coverage area. A wireless station can associate with a particular access point only if it is within the access point's coverage area.

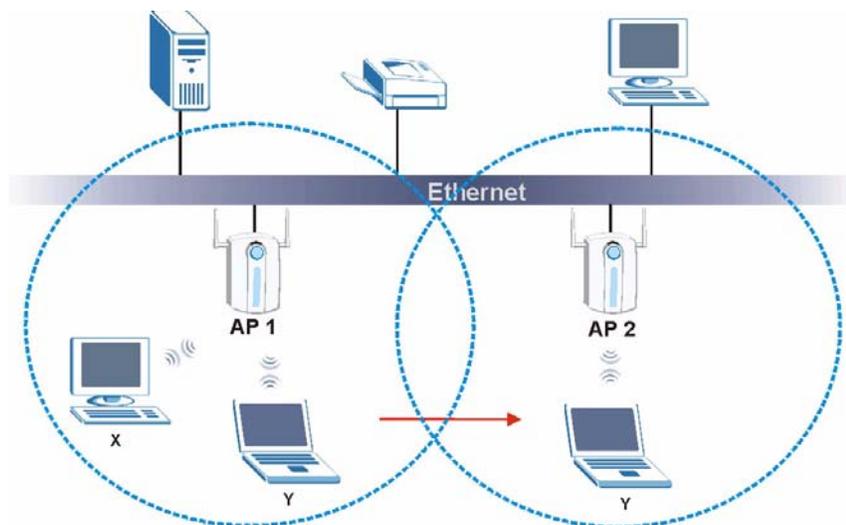
In a network environment with multiple access points, wireless stations are able to switch from one access point to another as they move between the coverage areas. This is known as roaming. As the wireless station moves from place to place, it is responsible for choosing the most appropriate access point depending on the signal strength, network utilization or other factors.

The roaming feature on the access points allows the access points to relay information about the wireless stations to each other. When a wireless station moves from a coverage area to another, it scans and uses the channel of a new access point, which then informs the other access points on the LAN about the change. An example is shown in [Figure 65 on page 111](#).

With roaming, a wireless LAN mobile user enjoys a continuous connection to the wired network through an access point while moving around the wireless LAN.

Enable roaming to exchange the latest bridge information of all wireless stations between APs when a wireless station moves between coverage areas. Wireless stations can still associate with other APs even if you disable roaming. Enabling roaming ensures correct traffic forwarding (bridge tables are updated) and maximum AP efficiency. The AP deletes records of wireless stations that associate with other APs (Non-ZyXEL APs may not be able to perform this). 802.1x authentication information is not exchanged (at the time of writing).

Figure 65 Roaming Example



The steps below describe the roaming process.

- 1 Wireless station **Y** moves from the coverage area of access point **AP 1** to that of access point **AP 2**.
- 2 Wireless station **Y** scans and detects the signal of access point **AP 2**.
- 3 Wireless station **Y** sends an association request to access point **AP 2**.

- 4 Access point **AP 2** acknowledges the presence of wireless station **Y** and relays this information to access point **AP 1** through the wired LAN.
- 5 Access point **AP 1** updates the new position of wireless station **Y**.

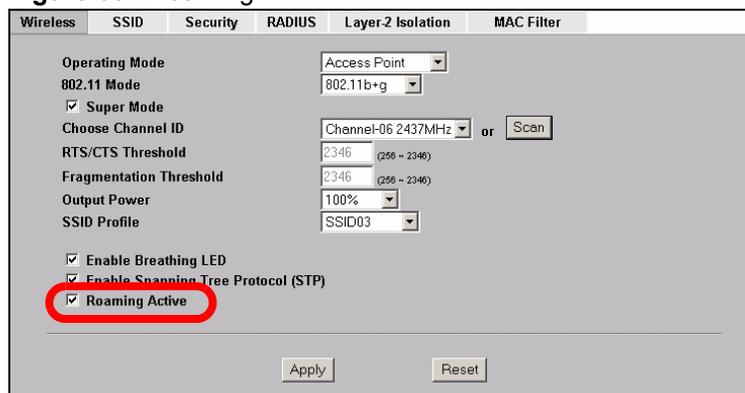
8.4.1 Requirements for Roaming

The following requirements must be met in order for wireless stations to roam between the coverage areas.

- 1 All the access points must be on the same subnet and configured with the same ESSID.
- 2 If IEEE 802.1x user authentication is enabled and to be done locally on the access point, the new access point must have the user profile for the wireless station.
- 3 The adjacent access points should use different radio channels when their coverage areas overlap.
- 4 All access points must use the same port number to relay roaming information.
- 5 The access points must be connected to the Ethernet and be able to get IP addresses from a DHCP server if using dynamic IP address assignment.

To enable roaming on your ZyXEL Device, click **WIRELESS > Wireless**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 66 Roaming



The screenshot shows the ZyXEL Wireless configuration page. The 'Wireless' tab is selected. The 'Roaming Active' checkbox is checked and circled in red. Other settings include: Operating Mode (Access Point), 802.11 Mode (802.11b+g), Super Mode (checked), Choose Channel ID (Channel-06 2437MHz), RTS/CTS Threshold (2346), Fragmentation Threshold (2346), Output Power (100%), SSID Profile (SSID03), Enable Breathing LED (checked), and Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) (checked). The 'Apply' and 'Reset' buttons are at the bottom.

Select the **Roaming Active** check box and click **Apply**.

IP Screen

This chapter discusses how to configure IP on the ZyXEL Device.

9.1 Factory Ethernet Defaults

The Ethernet parameters of the ZyXEL Device are preset in the factory with the following values:

- 1 IP address of 192.168.1.2
- 2 Subnet mask of 255.255.255.0 (24 bits)

These parameters should work for the majority of installations.

9.2 TCP/IP Parameters

9.2.1 WAN IP Address Assignment

Every computer on the Internet must have a unique IP address. If your networks are isolated from the Internet (only between your two branch offices, for instance) you can assign any IP addresses to the hosts without problems. However, the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) has reserved the following three blocks of IP addresses specifically for private networks.

Table 33 Private IP Address Ranges

10.0.0.0	-	10.255.255.255
172.16.0.0	-	172.31.255.255
192.168.0.0	-	192.168.255.255

You can obtain your IP address from the IANA, from an ISP or have it assigned by a private network. If you belong to a small organization and your Internet access is through an ISP, the ISP can provide you with the Internet addresses for your local networks. On the other hand, if you are part of a much larger organization, you should consult your network administrator for the appropriate IP addresses.



Regardless of your particular situation, do not create an arbitrary IP address; always follow the guidelines above. For more information on address assignment, please refer to RFC 1597, Address Allocation for Private Internets and RFC 1466, Guidelines for Management of IP Address Space.

9.3 Configuring IP

Click **IP** to display the screen shown next.

Figure 67 IP Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 34 IP Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Address Assignment	
Get automatically from DHCP	Select this option if your ZyXEL Device is using a dynamically assigned IP address from a DHCP server each time. Note: You must know the IP address assigned to the ZyXEL Device (by the DHCP server) to access the ZyXEL Device again.
Use fixed IP address	Select this option if your ZyXEL Device is using a static IP address. When you select this option, fill in the fields below.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of your ZyXEL Device in dotted decimal notation. Note: If you change the ZyXEL Device's IP address, you must use the new IP address if you want to access the web configurator again.
IP Subnet Mask	Type the subnet mask.
Gateway IP Address	Type the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your ZyXEL Device that will forward the packet to the destination. On the LAN, the gateway must be a router on the same segment as your ZyXEL Device; over the WAN, the gateway must be the IP address of one of the remote nodes.

Table 34 IP Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Rogue AP

This chapter discusses rogue wireless access points (APs) and how to configure the ZyXEL Device's rogue AP detection feature.

10.1 Rogue AP Introduction

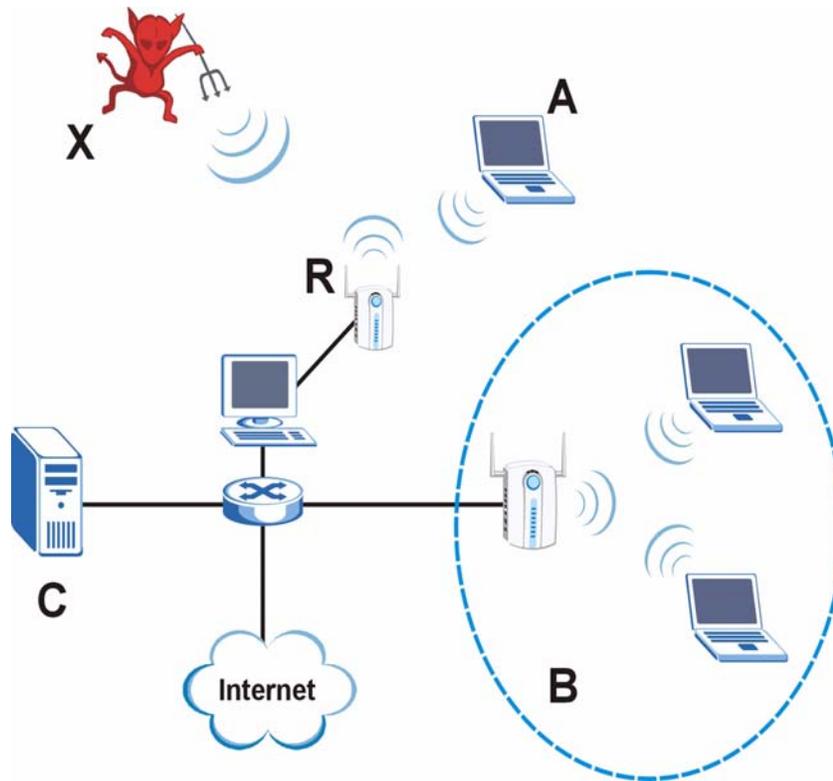
A rogue AP is a wireless access point operating in a network's coverage area that is not a sanctioned part of that network. Rogue APs are not under the control of the network's administrators, and can open up holes in a network's security. Attackers can take advantage of a rogue AP's weaker (or non-existent) security to gain access to the network, or set up their own rogue APs in order to capture information from wireless clients. If a scan reveals a rogue AP, you can use commercially-available software to physically locate it.

Note that it is not necessary for a network to have a legitimate wireless LAN component for rogue APs to open the network to an attacker. In this case, any AP detected can be classified as rogue.

10.2 Rogue AP Examples

In the following example, a corporate network's security is compromised by a rogue AP (**R**) set up by an employee at his workstation in order to allow him to connect his notebook computer wirelessly (**A**). The company's legitimate wireless network (the dashed ellipse **B**) is well-secured, but the rogue AP uses inferior security that is easily broken by an attacker (**X**) running readily available encryption-cracking software. In this example, the attacker now has access to the company network, including sensitive data stored on the file server (**C**).

Figure 68 Rogue AP: Example



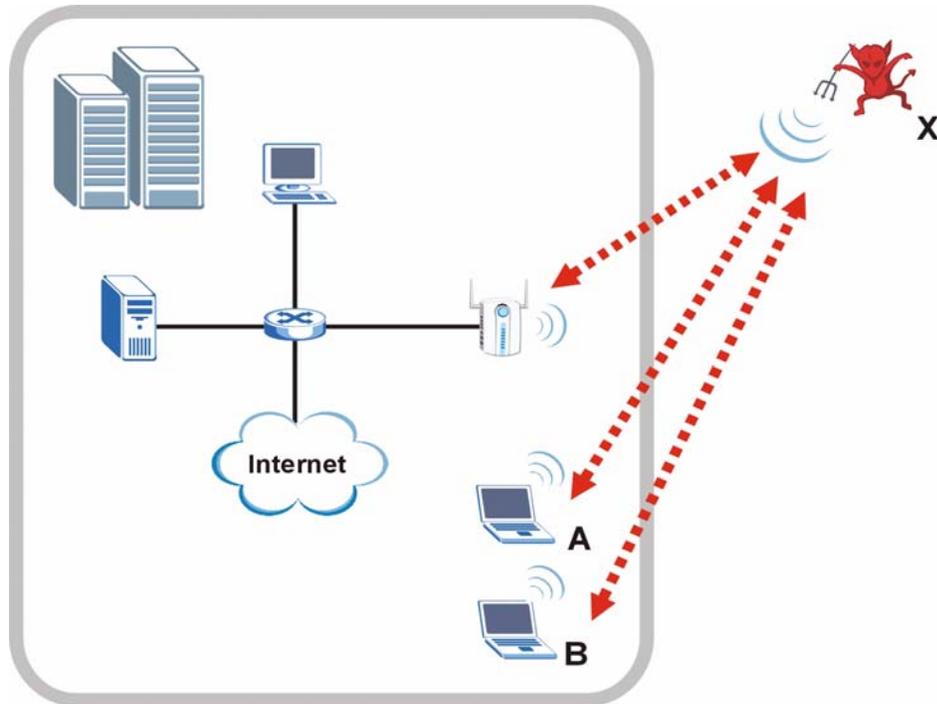
10.2.1 “Honeypot” Attack

Rogue APs need not be connected to the legitimate network to pose a severe security threat. In the following example, an attacker (X) is stationed in a vehicle outside a company building, using a rogue access point equipped with a powerful antenna. By mimicking a legitimate (company network) AP, the attacker tries to capture usernames, passwords, and other sensitive information from unsuspecting clients (A and B) who attempt to connect. This is known as a “honeypot” attack.

If a rogue AP in this scenario has sufficient power and is broadcasting the correct SSID (Service Set Identifier) clients have no way of knowing that they are not associating with a legitimate company AP. The attacker can forward network traffic from associated clients to a legitimate AP, creating the impression of normal service. This is a variety of “man-in-the-middle” attack.

This scenario can also be part of a wireless denial of service (DoS) attack, in which associated wireless clients are deprived of network access. Other opportunities for the attacker include the introduction of malware (malicious software) into the network.

Figure 69 “Honeytrap” Attack



10.3 Configuring Rogue AP Detection

You can configure the ZyXEL Device to detect rogue IEEE 802.11a (5 GHz) and IEEE 802.11b/g (2.4 GHz) APs.

If you have more than one AP in your wireless network, you must also configure the list of “friendly” APs. Friendly APs are the other wireless access points in your network, as well as any others that you know are not a threat (those from neighboring networks, for example). It is recommended that you export (save) your list of friendly APs often, especially if you have a network with a large number of access points.

You can choose to scan for rogue APs manually, or to have the ZyXEL Device scan automatically at pre-defined intervals.

You can also set the ZyXEL Device to email you immediately when a rogue AP is detected (see [Chapter 13 on page 151](#) for information on how to set up email logs).

10.3.1 Rogue AP: Configuration

Click **ROGUE AP > Configuration**. The following screen appears.

Figure 70 ROGUE AP > Configuration

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 35 ROGUE AP > Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active Rogue AP Period Detection	Select Yes to turn rogue AP detection on. You must also enter a time value in the Period field. Select No to turn rogue AP detection off.
Period (min.)	Enter the period you want the ZyXEL Device to wait between scanning for rogue APs (between 10 and 60 minutes). You must also select Yes in the Active Rogue AP Period Detection field.
Friendly AP List	
Export	Click this button to save the current list of friendly APs' MAC addresses and descriptions (as displayed in the ROGUE AP > Friendly AP screen) to your computer.
File Path	Enter the location of a previously-saved friendly AP list to upload to the ZyXEL Device. Alternatively, click the Browse button to locate a list.
Browse	Click this button to locate a previously-saved list of friendly APs to upload to the ZyXEL Device.
Import	Click this button to upload the previously-saved list of friendly APs displayed in the File Path field to the ZyXEL Device.
Apply	Click Apply to save your settings.
Reset	Click Reset to return all fields in this screen to their previously-saved values.

10.3.2 Rogue AP: Friendly AP

The friendly AP list displays details of all the access points in your area that you know are not a threat. If you have more than one AP in your network, you need to configure this list to include your other APs. If your wireless network overlaps with that of a neighbor (for example) you should also add these APs to the list, as they do not compromise your own network's security. If you do not add them to the friendly AP list, these access points will appear in the **Rogue AP** list each time the ZyXEL Device scans.

Figure 71 ROGUE AP > Friendly AP

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 36 ROGUE AP > Friendly AP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add Friendly AP	Use this section to manually add a wireless access point to the list. You must know the device's MAC address.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address of the AP you wish to add to the list.
Description	Enter a short, explanatory description identifying the AP with a maximum of 32 alphanumeric characters. Spaces, underscores (_) and dashes (-) are allowed.
Add	Click this button to include the AP in the list.
Friendly AP List	This is the list of safe wireless access points you have already configured.
#	This is the index number of the AP's entry in the list.
MAC Address	This field displays the Media Access Control (MAC) address of the AP. All wireless devices have a MAC address that uniquely identifies them.
SSID	This field displays the Service Set Identifier (also known as the network name) of the AP.
Channel	This field displays the wireless channel the AP is currently using.
Security	This field displays the type of wireless encryption the AP is currently using.
Description	This is the description you entered when adding the AP to the list.
Delete	Click this button to remove an AP's entry from the list.

10.3.3 Rogue AP List

This list displays details of all IEEE 802.11a/b/g wireless access points within the ZyXEL Device's coverage area, except for the ZyXEL Device itself and the access points included in the friendly AP list (see [Section 10.3.2 on page 120](#)).

You can set how often you want the ZyXEL Device to scan for rogue APs in the **ROGUE AP > Configuration** screen (see [Section 10.3.1 on page 119](#)).

Click **ROGUE AP > Rogue AP**. The following screen displays.

Figure 72 ROGUE AP > Rogue AP

#	Active	MAC Address	SSID	Channel	Security	Description
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:08:02:00:07	3	2	WPAPSK	
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:01:00:20:90:DA	65	11	WPAPSK	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 37 ROGUE AP > Rogue AP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Rogue AP List	This displays details of access points in the ZyXEL Device's coverage area that are not listed in the friendly AP list (see Section 10.3.2 on page 120)
Refresh	Click this button to have the ZyXEL Device scan for rogue APs.
#	This is the index number of the AP's entry in the list.
Active	Use this check box to select the APs you want to move to the friendly AP list (see Section 10.3.2 on page 120)
MAC Address	This field displays the Media Access Control (MAC) address of the AP. All wireless devices have a MAC address that uniquely identifies them.
SSID	This field displays the Service Set Identifier (also known as the network name) of the AP.
Channel	This field displays the wireless channel the AP is currently using.
Security	This field displays the type of wireless encryption the AP is currently using.
Description	If you want to move the AP's entry to the friendly AP list, enter a short, explanatory description identifying the AP before you click Add to Friendly AP List . A maximum of 32 alphanumeric characters are allowed in this field. Spaces, underscores (_) and dashes (-) are allowed.
Add to Friendly AP List	If you know that the AP described in an entry is not a threat, select the Active check box, enter a short description in the Description field and click this button to add the entry to the friendly AP list (see Section 10.3.2 on page 120). When the ZyXEL Device next scans for rogue APs, the selected AP does not appear in the rogue AP list.
Reset	Click Reset to return all fields in this screen to their default values.

Remote Management

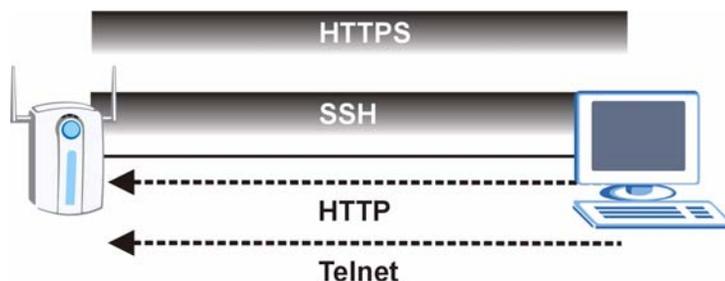
This chapter provides information on the Remote Management screens.

11.1 Remote Management Overview

Remote management allows you to determine which services/protocols can access which of the ZyXEL Device's interfaces (if any) from which computers.

The following figure shows secure and insecure management of the ZyXEL Device. HTTPS and SSH access are secure. HTTP and Telnet access are not secure.

Figure 73 Secure and Insecure Remote Management



You may manage your ZyXEL Device from a remote location via:

Table 38 Remote Management Overview

- | | |
|------------|----------------------|
| • WLAN | • ALL (LAN and WLAN) |
| • LAN only | • Neither (Disable). |

To disable remote management of a service, select **Disable** in the corresponding **Server Access** field.

You may only have one remote management session running at a time. The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a remote management session of lower priority when another remote management session of higher priority starts. The priorities for the different types of remote management sessions are as follows.

- 1 Console port
- 2 SSH
- 3 Telnet
- 4 HTTPS and HTTP

11.1.1 Remote Management Limitations

Remote management does not work when:

- 1 You have not enabled that service on the interface in the corresponding remote management screen.
- 2 The IP address in the **Secured Client IP** field does not match the client IP address. If it does not match, the ZyXEL Device will disconnect the session immediately.
- 3 There is already another remote management session with an equal or higher priority running. You may only have one remote management session running at one time.
- 4 A filter is applied (through the SMT or the commands) to block a Telnet, FTP or Web service.

11.1.2 System Timeout

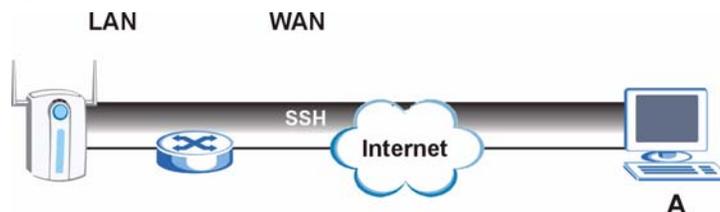
There is a default system management idle timeout of five minutes (three hundred seconds). The ZyXEL Device automatically logs you out if the management session remains idle for longer than this timeout period. The management session does not time out when a statistics screen is polling. You can change the timeout period in the **System** screen

11.2 SSH

You can use SSH (Secure SHell) to securely access the ZyXEL Device's SMT or command line interface. Specify which interfaces allow SSH access and from which IP address the access can come.

SSH is a secure communication protocol that combines authentication and data encryption to provide secure encrypted communication between two hosts over an unsecured network. In the following figure, computer A on the Internet uses SSH to securely connect to the ZyXEL Device for a management session.

Figure 74 SSH Communication Example



Configure SSH in the **REMOTE MGNT > TELNET** screen (see [Section 11.3 on page 124](#)).

11.3 Telnet

You can use Telnet to access the ZyXEL Device's SMT or command line interface. Specify which interfaces allow Telnet access and from which IP address the access can come.

Click **REMOTE MGNT > TELNET** to display the screen as shown.

Figure 75 Remote Management: Telnet

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 39 Remote Management: Telnet

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
TELNET	
Server Port	You can change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.
Server Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using Telnet.
Secured Client IP Address	A secured client is a “trusted” computer that is allowed to communicate with the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select All to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Choose Selected to just allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
SSH	
Server Port	You can change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.
Server Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using SSH.
Secured Client IP Address	A secured client is a “trusted” computer that is allowed to communicate with the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select All to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Choose Selected to just allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings and exit this screen.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

11.4 Configuring FTP

You can upload and download the ZyXEL Device’s firmware and configuration files using FTP; please see the chapter on firmware and configuration file maintenance for details. To use this feature, your computer must have an FTP client.

To change your ZyXEL Device’s FTP settings, click **REMOTE MGMT > FTP**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 76 Remote Management: FTP

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 40 Remote Management: FTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server Port	You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.
Server Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Secured Client IP Address	A secured client is a “trusted” computer that is allowed to communicate with the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select All to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Choose Selected to just allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings and exit this screen.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

11.5 Configuring WWW

To change your ZyXEL Device’s World Wide Web settings, click **REMOTE MGNT > WWW**. You can set the ZyXEL Device to use HTTP or HTTPS (HTTPS adds security) for web configurator sessions. Specify which interfaces allow web configurator access and from which IP address the access can come.

Figure 77 Remote Management: WWW

TELNET	FTP	WWW	SNMP
HTTPS			
Server Certificate	auto_generated_self_signed_cert (See My Certificates)		
<input type="checkbox"/> Authenticate Client Certificates (See Trusted CAs)			
Server Port	443		
Server Access	WLAN & LAN		
Secured Client IP Address	<input checked="" type="radio"/> All <input type="radio"/> Selected	0.0.0.0	
WWW			
Server Port	80		
Server Access	WLAN & LAN		
Secured Client IP Address	<input checked="" type="radio"/> All <input type="radio"/> Selected	0.0.0.0	
Apply		Reset	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 41 Remote Management: WWW

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
HTTPS	
Server Certificate	Select the Server Certificate that the ZyXEL Device will use to identify itself. The ZyXEL Device is the SSL server and must always authenticate itself to the SSL client (the computer which requests the HTTPS connection with the ZyXEL Device).
Authenticate Client Certificates	Select Authenticate Client Certificates (optional) to require the SSL client to authenticate itself with the ZyXEL Device by sending the ZyXEL Device a certificate. To do that the SSL client must have a CA-signed certificate from a CA that has been imported as a trusted CA on the ZyXEL Device (see the appendix on importing certificates for details).
Server Port	The HTTPS proxy server listens on port 443 by default. If you change the HTTPS proxy server port to a different number on the ZyXEL Device, for example 8443, then you must notify people who need to access the ZyXEL Device web configurator to use "https://ZyXEL Device IP Address: 8443 " as the URL.
Server Access	Select a ZyXEL Device interface from Server Access on which incoming HTTPS access is allowed. You can allow only secure web configurator access by setting the HTTP Server Access field to Disable and setting the HTTPS Server Access field to an interface(s).
Secured Client IP Address	A secure client is a "trusted" computer that is allowed to communicate with the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select All to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Choose Selected to just allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
WWW	
Server Port	You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.

Table 41 Remote Management: WWW

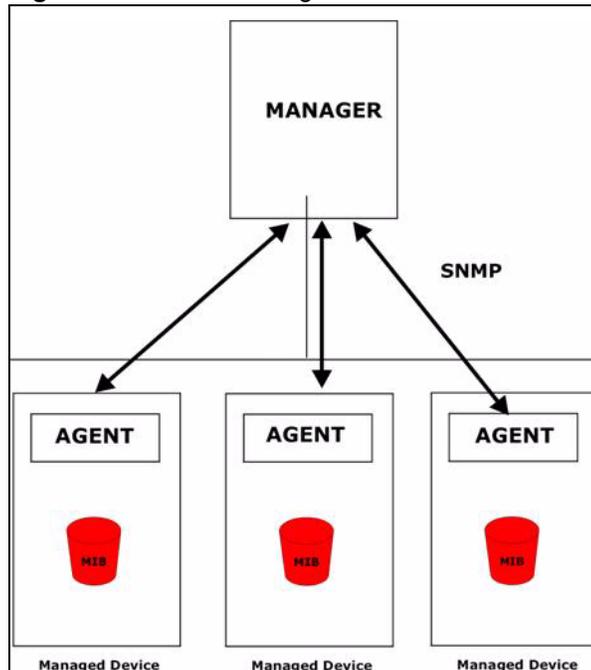
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Secured Client IP Address	A secured client is a “trusted” computer that is allowed to communicate with the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select All to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Choose Selected to just allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings and exit this screen.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

11.6 SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is a protocol used for exchanging management information between network devices. SNMP is a member of the TCP/IP protocol suite. Your ZyXEL Device supports SNMP agent functionality, which allows a manager station to manage and monitor the ZyXEL Device through the network. The ZyXEL Device supports SNMP version one (SNMPv1) and version two (SNMPv2c). The next figure illustrates an SNMP management operation. SNMP is only available if TCP/IP is configured.



SNMP is only available if TCP/IP is configured.

Figure 78 SNMP Management Model

An SNMP managed network consists of two main types of component: agents and a manager.

An agent is a management software module that resides in a managed device (the ZyXEL Device). An agent translates the local management information from the managed device into a form compatible with SNMP. The manager is the console through which network administrators perform network management functions. It executes applications that control and monitor managed devices.

The managed devices contain object variables/managed objects that define each piece of information to be collected about a device. Examples of variables include such as number of packets received, node port status etc. A Management Information Base (MIB) is a collection of managed objects. SNMP allows a manager and agents to communicate for the purpose of accessing these objects.

SNMP itself is a simple request/response protocol based on the manager/agent model. The manager issues a request and the agent returns responses using the following protocol operations:

- Get - Allows the manager to retrieve an object variable from the agent.
- GetNext - Allows the manager to retrieve the next object variable from a table or list within an agent. In SNMPv1, when a manager wants to retrieve all elements of a table from an agent, it initiates a Get operation, followed by a series of GetNext operations.
- Set - Allows the manager to set values for object variables within an agent.
- Trap - Used by the agent to inform the manager of some events.

11.6.1 Supported MIBs

The ZyXEL Device supports MIB II that is defined in RFC-1213 and RFC-1215 as well as the proprietary ZyXEL private MIB. The purpose of the MIBs is to let administrators collect statistical data and monitor status and performance.

11.6.2 SNMP Traps

The ZyXEL Device can send the following traps to the SNMP manager.

Table 42 SNMP Traps

TRAP NAME	OBJECT IDENTIFIER # (OID)	DESCRIPTION
Generic Traps		
coldStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.1	This trap is sent after booting (power on). This trap is defined in RFC-1215.
warmStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.2	This trap is sent after booting (software reboot). This trap is defined in RFC-1215.
linkDown	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.3	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is down.
linkUp	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.4	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is up.

Table 42 SNMP Traps

TRAP NAME	OBJECT IDENTIFIER # (OID)	DESCRIPTION
authenticationFailure (defined in <i>RFC-1215</i>)	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.5	The device sends this trap when it receives any SNMP get or set requirements with the wrong community (password). Note: snmpEnableAuthenTraps, OID 1.3.6.1.2.1.11.30 (defined in RFC 1214 and RFC 1907) must be enabled on in order for the device to send authenticationFailure traps. Use a MIB browser to enable or disable snmpEnableAuthenTraps.
Traps defined in the ZyXEL Private MIB.		
whyReboot	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.13.0.1	This trap is sent with the reason for restarting before the system reboots (warm start). "System reboot by user!" is added for an intentional reboot (for example, download new files, CLI command "sys reboot"). If the system reboots because of fatal errors, a code for the error is listed.
pwTFTPStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.9.2.3.3.1	This trap is sent to indicate the status and result of a TFTP client session that has ended.

11.7 SNMP Traps

Some traps include an SNMP interface index. The following table maps the SNMP interface indexes to the ZyXEL Device's physical ports.

Table 43 SNMP Interface Index to Physical Port Mapping

INTERFACE TYPE	PHYSICAL PORT
enet0	WLAN
enet1	Ethernet port

11.7.1 Configuring SNMP

To change your ZyXEL Device's SNMP settings, click **REMOTE MGMT > SNMP**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 79 Remote Management: SNMP

TELNET	FTP	WWW	SNMP
SNMP Configuration			
Get Community	<input type="text" value="public"/>		
Set Community	<input type="text" value="public"/>		
Community	<input type="text" value="public"/>		
Destination	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>		
SNMP			
Service Port	<input type="text" value="161"/>		
Service Access	<input type="text" value="WLAN & LAN"/>		
Secured Client IP Address	<input checked="" type="radio"/> All <input type="radio"/> Selected		<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>
<input type="button" value="Apply"/>		<input type="button" value="Reset"/>	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 44 Remote Management: SNMP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SNMP Configuration	
Get Community	Enter the Get Community , which is the password for the incoming Get and GetNext requests from the management station. The default is public and allows all requests.
Set Community	Enter the Set community , which is the password for incoming Set requests from the management station. The default is public and allows all requests.
Community	Type the trap community, which is the password sent with each trap to the SNMP manager. The default is public and allows all requests.
Destination	Type the IP address of the station to send your SNMP traps to.
SNMP	
Service Port	You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.
Service Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Secured Client IP Address	A secured client is a “trusted” computer that is allowed to communicate with the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select All to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Choose Selected to just allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings and exit this screen.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Certificates

This chapter gives background information about public-key certificates and explains how to use them.

12.1 Certificates Overview

The ZyXEL Device can use certificates (also called digital IDs) to authenticate users. Certificates are based on public-private key pairs. A certificate contains the certificate owner's identity and public key. Certificates provide a way to exchange public keys for use in authentication.

A Certification Authority (CA) issues certificates and guarantees the identity of each certificate owner. There are commercial certification authorities like CyberTrust or VeriSign and government certification authorities. You can use the ZyXEL Device to generate certification requests that contain identifying information and public keys and then send the certification requests to a certification authority.

In public-key encryption and decryption, each host has two keys. One key is public and can be made openly available; the other key is private and must be kept secure. Public-key encryption in general works as follows.

- 1 Tim wants to send a private message to Jenny. Tim generates a public key pair. What is encrypted with one key can only be decrypted using the other.
- 2 Tim keeps the private key and makes the public key openly available.
- 3 Tim uses his private key to encrypt the message and sends it to Jenny.
- 4 Jenny receives the message and uses Tim's public key to decrypt it.
- 5 Additionally, Jenny uses her own private key to encrypt a message and Tim uses Jenny's public key to decrypt the message.

The ZyXEL Device uses certificates based on public-key cryptology to authenticate users attempting to establish a connection, not to encrypt the data that you send after establishing a connection. The method used to secure the data that you send through an established connection depends on the type of connection. For example, a VPN tunnel might use the triple DES encryption algorithm.

The certification authority uses its private key to sign certificates. Anyone can then use the certification authority's public key to verify the certificates.

A certification path is the hierarchy of certification authority certificates that validate a certificate. The ZyXEL Device does not trust a certificate if any certificate on its path has expired or been revoked.

Certification authorities maintain directory servers with databases of valid and revoked certificates. A directory of certificates that have been revoked before the scheduled expiration is called a CRL (Certificate Revocation List). The ZyXEL Device can check a peer's certificate against a directory server's list of revoked certificates. The framework of servers, software, procedures and policies that handles keys is called PKI (public-key infrastructure).

12.1.1 Advantages of Certificates

Certificates offer the following benefits.

- The ZyXEL Device only has to store the certificates of the certification authorities that you decide to trust, no matter how many devices you need to authenticate.
- Key distribution is simple and very secure since you can freely distribute public keys and you never need to transmit private keys.

12.2 Self-signed Certificates

You can have the ZyXEL Device act as a certification authority and sign its own certificates.

12.3 Verifying a Certificate

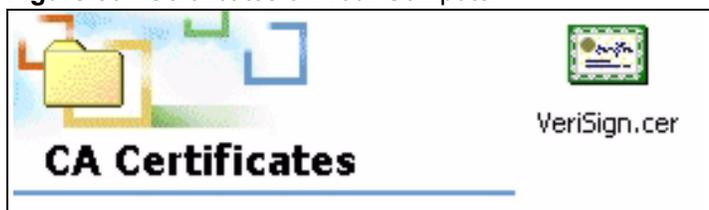
Before you import a trusted CA certificate into the ZyXEL Device, you should verify that you have the actual certificate. This is especially important since the ZyXEL Device also trusts any valid certificate signed by any of the imported trusted CA certificates.

12.3.1 Checking the Fingerprint of a Certificate on Your Computer

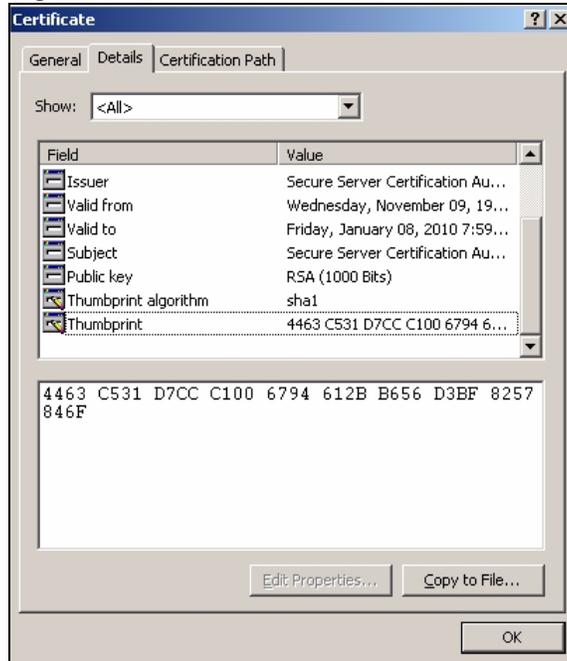
A certificate's fingerprints are message digests calculated using the MD5 or SHA1 algorithms. The following procedure describes how to check a certificate's fingerprint to verify that you have the actual certificate.

- 1 Browse to where you have the certificate saved on your computer.
- 2 Make sure that the certificate has a ".cer" or ".crt" file name extension.

Figure 80 Certificates on Your Computer



- 3 Double-click the certificate's icon to open the **Certificate** window. Click the **Details** tab and scroll down to the **Thumbprint Algorithm** and **Thumbprint** fields.

Figure 81 Certificate Details

- 4 Use a secure method to verify that the certificate owner has the same information in the **Thumbprint Algorithm** and **Thumbprint** fields. The secure method may vary according to your situation. Possible examples would be over the telephone or through an HTTPS connection.

12.4 Configuration Summary

This section summarizes how to manage certificates.

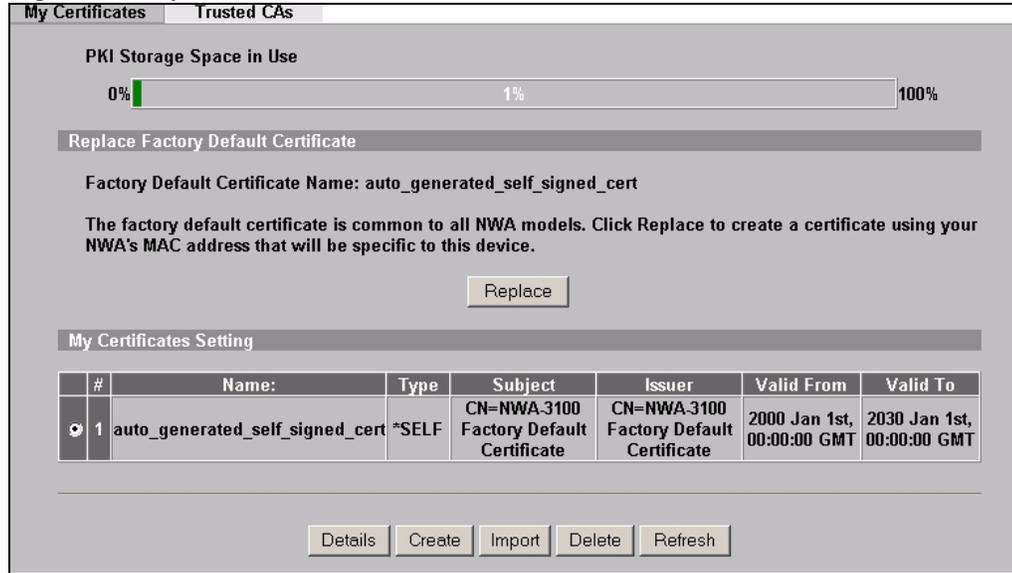
Use the **My Certificate** screens to generate and export self-signed certificates or certification requests and import the ZyXEL Devices' CA-signed certificates.

Use the **Trusted CA** screens to save CA certificates to the ZyXEL Device.

12.5 My Certificates

Click **CERTIFICATES > My Certificates** to open the ZyXEL Device's summary list of certificates and certification requests. Certificates display in black and certification requests display in gray. See the following figure.

Figure 82 My Certificates



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 45 My Certificates

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
PKI Storage Space in Use	This bar displays the percentage of the ZyXEL Device's PKI storage space that is currently in use. When you are using 80% or less of the storage space, the bar is green. When the amount of space used is over 80%, the bar is red. When the bar is red, you should consider deleting expired or unnecessary certificates before adding more certificates.
Replace	This button displays when the ZyXEL Device has the factory default certificate. The factory default certificate is common to all ZyXEL Devices that use certificates. ZyXEL recommends that you use this button to replace the factory default certificate with one that uses your ZyXEL Device's MAC address.
#	This field displays the certificate index number. The certificates are listed in alphabetical order.
Name	This field displays the name used to identify this certificate. It is recommended that you give each certificate a unique name.
Type	This field displays what kind of certificate this is. REQ represents a certification request and is not yet a valid certificate. Send a certification request to a certification authority, which then issues a certificate. Use the My Certificate Import screen to import the certificate and replace the request. SELF represents a self-signed certificate. *SELF represents the default self-signed certificate, which the ZyXEL Device uses to sign imported trusted remote host certificates. CERT represents a certificate issued by a certification authority.
Subject	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's owner, such as CN (Common Name), OU (Organizational Unit or department), O (Organization or company) and C (Country). It is recommended that each certificate have unique subject information.
Issuer	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's issuing certification authority, such as a common name, organizational unit or department, organization or company and country. With self-signed certificates, this is the same information as in the Subject field.

Table 45 My Certificates (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Valid From	This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. The text displays in red and includes a Not Yet Valid! message if the certificate has not yet become applicable.
Valid To	This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an Expiring! or Expired! message if the certificate is about to expire or has already expired.
Details	<p>Click the details icon to open a screen with an in-depth list of information about the certificate.</p> <p>Click the delete icon to remove the certificate. A window displays asking you to confirm that you want to delete the certificate.</p> <p>You cannot delete a certificate that one or more features is configured to use. Do the following to delete a certificate that shows *SELF in the Type field.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make sure that no other features, such as HTTPS, VPN, SSH are configured to use the *SELF certificate. 2. Click the details icon next to another self-signed certificate (see the description on the Create button if you need to create a self-signed certificate). 3. Select the Default self-signed certificate which signs the imported remote host certificates check box. 4. Click Apply to save the changes and return to the My Certificates screen. 5. The certificate that originally showed *SELF displays SELF and you can delete it now. <p>Note that subsequent certificates move up by one when you take this action</p>
Create	Click Create to go to the screen where you can have the ZyXEL Device generate a certificate or a certification request.
Import	Click Import to open a screen where you can save the certificate that you have enrolled from a certification authority from your computer to the ZyXEL Device.
Delete	Click Delete to delete an existing certificate. A window display asking you to confirm that you want to delete the certificate. Note that subsequent certificates move up by one when you take this action.
Refresh	Click Refresh to display the current validity status of the certificates.

12.6 Certificate File Formats

The certification authority certificate that you want to import has to be in one of these file formats:

- Binary X.509: This is an ITU-T recommendation that defines the formats for X.509 certificates.
- PEM (Base-64) encoded X.509: This Privacy Enhanced Mail format uses 64 ASCII characters to convert a binary X.509 certificate into a printable form.
- Binary PKCS#7: This is a standard that defines the general syntax for data (including digital signatures) that may be encrypted. The ZyXEL Device currently allows the importation of a PKCS#7 file that contains a single certificate.
- PEM (Base-64) encoded PKCS#7: This Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format uses 64 ASCII characters to convert a binary PKCS#7 certificate into a printable form.

12.7 Importing a Certificate

Click **CERTIFICATES > My Certificates** and then **Import** to open the **My Certificate Import** screen. Follow the instructions in this screen to save an existing certificate to the ZyXEL Device.



You can import only a certificate that matches a corresponding certification request that was generated by the ZyXEL Device.



The certificate you import replaces the corresponding request in the **My Certificates** screen.



You must remove any spaces from the certificate's filename before you can import it.

Figure 83 My Certificate Import

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 46 My Certificate Import

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Browse to find it.
Browse	Click Browse to find the certificate file you want to upload.

Table 46 My Certificate Import

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click Apply to save the certificate on the ZyXEL Device.
Cancel	Click Cancel to quit and return to the My Certificates screen.

12.8 Creating a Certificate

Click **CERTIFICATES > My Certificates** and then **Create** to open the **My Certificate Create** screen. Use this screen to have the ZyXEL Device create a self-signed certificate, enroll a certificate with a certification authority or generate a certification request, see the following figure.

Figure 84 My Certificate Create

The screenshot shows the 'My Certificate Create' web interface. At the top is a 'Certificate Name' text input field. Below it is a section titled 'Subject Information' with a grey header. Under this section, there are three radio buttons for 'Common Name': 'Host IP Address' (selected), 'Host Domain Name', and 'E-Mail'. The 'Host IP Address' field contains '0.0.0.0'. Below these are text input fields for 'Organizational Unit', 'Organization', and 'Country'. A 'Key Length' dropdown is set to '1024 bits'. The next section is 'Enrollment Options' with a grey header, containing three radio buttons: 'Create a self-signed certificate' (selected), 'Create a certification request and save it locally for later manual enrollment', and 'Create a certification request and enroll for a certificate immediately online'. Below are dropdown menus for 'Enrollment Protocol' (set to 'Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP)'), 'CA Server Address', and 'CA Certificate' (with a link to 'Trusted CAs'). Text input fields are provided for 'Request Authentication', 'Reference Number', and 'Key'. At the bottom are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 47 My Certificate Create

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Certificate Name	Type up to 31 ASCII characters (not including spaces) to identify this certificate.
Subject Information	Use these fields to record information that identifies the owner of the certificate. You do not have to fill in every field, although the Common Name is mandatory. The certification authority may add fields (such as a serial number) to the subject information when it issues a certificate. It is recommended that each certificate have unique subject information.

Table 47 My Certificate Create (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Common Name	Select a radio button to identify the certificate's owner by IP address, domain name or e-mail address. Type the IP address (in dotted decimal notation), domain name or e-mail address in the field provided. The domain name or e-mail address can be up to 31 ASCII characters. The domain name or e-mail address is for identification purposes only and can be any string.
Organizational Unit	Type up to 127 characters to identify the organizational unit or department to which the certificate owner belongs. You may use any character, including spaces, but the ZyXEL Device drops trailing spaces.
Organization	Type up to 127 characters to identify the company or group to which the certificate owner belongs. You may use any character, including spaces, but the ZyXEL Device drops trailing spaces.
Country	Type up to 127 characters to identify the nation where the certificate owner is located. You may use any character, including spaces, but the ZyXEL Device drops trailing spaces.
Key Length	Select a number from the drop-down list box to determine how many bits the key should use (512 to 2048). The longer the key, the more secure it is. A longer key also uses more PKI storage space.
Enrollment Options	These radio buttons deal with how and when the certificate is to be generated.
Create a self-signed certificate	Select Create a self-signed certificate to have the ZyXEL Device generate the certificate and act as the Certification Authority (CA) itself. This way you do not need to apply to a certification authority for certificates.
Create a certification request and save it locally for later manual enrollment	Select Create a certification request and save it locally for later manual enrollment to have the ZyXEL Device generate and store a request for a certificate. Use the My Certificate Details screen to view the certification request and copy it to send to the certification authority. Copy the certification request from the My Certificate Details screen (Section 12.9 on page 141) and then send it to the certification authority.
Create a certification request and enroll for a certificate immediately online	Select Create a certification request and enroll for a certificate immediately online to have the ZyXEL Device generate a request for a certificate and apply to a certification authority for a certificate. You must have the certification authority's certificate already imported in the Trusted CAs screen. When you select this option, you must select the certification authority's enrollment protocol and the certification authority's certificate from the drop-down list boxes and enter the certification authority's server address. You also need to fill in the Reference Number and Key if the certification authority requires them.
Enrollment Protocol	Select the certification authority's enrollment protocol from the drop-down list box. Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) is a TCP-based enrollment protocol that was developed by VeriSign and Cisco. Certificate Management Protocol (CMP) is a TCP-based enrollment protocol that was developed by the Public Key Infrastructure X.509 working group of the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) and is specified in RFC 2510.
CA Server Address	Enter the IP address (or URL) of the certification authority server.
CA Certificate	Select the certification authority's certificate from the CA Certificate drop-down list box. You must have the certification authority's certificate already imported in the Trusted CAs screen. Click Trusted CAs to go to the Trusted CAs screen where you can view (and manage) the ZyXEL Device's list of certificates of trusted certification authorities.

Table 47 My Certificate Create (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Request Authentication	When you select Create a certification request and enroll for a certificate immediately online , the certification authority may want you to include a reference number and key to identify you when you send a certification request. Fill in both the Reference Number and the Key fields if your certification authority uses CMP enrollment protocol. Just fill in the Key field if your certification authority uses the SECP enrollment protocol.
Key	Type the key that the certification authority gave you.
Apply	Click Apply to begin certificate or certification request generation.
Cancel	Click Cancel to quit and return to the My Certificates screen.

After you click **Apply** in the **My Certificate Create** screen, you see a screen that tells you the ZyXEL Device is generating the self-signed certificate or certification request.

After the ZyXEL Device successfully enrolls a certificate or generates a certification request or a self-signed certificate, you see a screen with a **Return** button that takes you back to the **My Certificates** screen.

If you configured the **My Certificate Create** screen to have the ZyXEL Device enroll a certificate and the certificate enrollment is not successful, you see a screen with a **Return** button that takes you back to the **My Certificate Create** screen. Click **Return** and check your information in the **My Certificate Create** screen. Make sure that the certification authority information is correct and that your Internet connection is working properly if you want the ZyXEL Device to enroll a certificate online.

12.9 My Certificate Details

Click **CERTIFICATES > My Certificates** to open the **My Certificates** screen (Figure 82 on page 136). Click the details button to open the **My Certificate Details** screen. You can use this screen to view in-depth certificate information and change the certificate's name. In the case of a self-signed certificate, you can set it to be the one that the ZyXEL Device uses to sign the trusted remote host certificates that you import to the ZyXEL Device.

Figure 85 My Certificate Details

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 48 My Certificate Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	This field displays the identifying name of this certificate. If you want to change the name, type up to 31 characters to identify this certificate. You may use any character (not including spaces).
Property Default self-signed certificate which signs the imported remote host certificates.	Select this check box to have the ZyXEL Device use this certificate to sign the trusted remote host certificates that you import to the ZyXEL Device. This check box is only available with self-signed certificates. If this check box is already selected, you cannot clear it in this screen, you must select this check box in another self-signed certificate's details screen. This automatically clears the check box in the details screen of the certificate that was previously set to sign the imported trusted remote host certificates.

Table 48 My Certificate Details (continued)

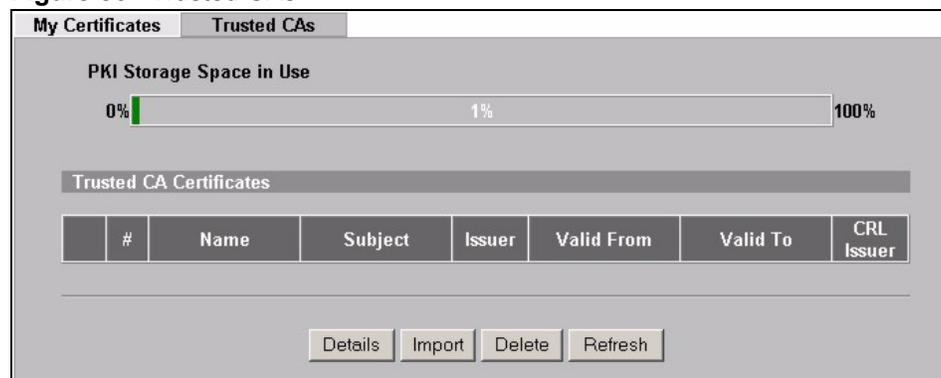
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Certificate Path	Click the Refresh button to have this read-only text box display the hierarchy of certification authorities that validate the certificate (and the certificate itself). If the issuing certification authority is one that you have imported as a trusted certification authority, it may be the only certification authority in the list (along with the certificate itself). If the certificate is a self-signed certificate, the certificate itself is the only one in the list. The ZyXEL Device does not trust the certificate and displays “Not trusted” in this field if any certificate on the path has expired or been revoked.
Refresh	Click Refresh to display the certification path.
Certificate Information	These read-only fields display detailed information about the certificate.
Type	This field displays general information about the certificate. CA-signed means that a Certification Authority signed the certificate. Self-signed means that the certificate’s owner signed the certificate (not a certification authority). “X.509” means that this certificate was created and signed according to the ITU-T X.509 recommendation that defines the formats for public-key certificates.
Version	This field displays the X.509 version number.
Serial Number	This field displays the certificate’s identification number given by the certification authority or generated by the ZyXEL Device.
Subject	This field displays information that identifies the owner of the certificate, such as Common Name (CN), Organizational Unit (OU), Organization (O) and Country (C).
Issuer	This field displays identifying information about the certificate’s issuing certification authority, such as Common Name, Organizational Unit, Organization and Country. With self-signed certificates, this is the same as the Subject Name field.
Signature Algorithm	This field displays the type of algorithm that was used to sign the certificate. The ZyXEL Device uses rsa-pkcs1-sha1 (RSA public-private key encryption algorithm and the SHA1 hash algorithm). Some certification authorities may use ras-pkcs1-md5 (RSA public-private key encryption algorithm and the MD5 hash algorithm).
Valid From	This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. The text displays in red and includes a Not Yet Valid! message if the certificate has not yet become applicable.
Valid To	This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an Expiring! or Expired! message if the certificate is about to expire or has already expired.
Key Algorithm	This field displays the type of algorithm that was used to generate the certificate’s key pair (the ZyXEL Device uses RSA encryption) and the length of the key set in bits (1024 bits for example).
Subject Alternative Name	This field displays the certificate owner’s IP address (IP), domain name (DNS) or e-mail address (EMAIL).
Key Usage	This field displays for what functions the certificate’s key can be used. For example, “DigitalSignature” means that the key can be used to sign certificates and “KeyEncipherment” means that the key can be used to encrypt text.
Basic Constraint	This field displays general information about the certificate. For example, Subject Type=CA means that this is a certification authority’s certificate and “Path Length Constraint=1” means that there can only be one certification authority in the certificate’s path.
MD5 Fingerprint	This is the certificate’s message digest that the ZyXEL Device calculated using the MD5 algorithm.

Table 48 My Certificate Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SHA1 Fingerprint	This is the certificate's message digest that the ZyXEL Device calculated using the SHA1 algorithm.
Certificate in PEM (Base-64) Encoded Format	This read-only text box displays the certificate or certification request in Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format. PEM uses 64 ASCII characters to convert the binary certificate into a printable form. You can copy and paste a certification request into a certification authority's web page, an e-mail that you send to the certification authority or a text editor and save the file on a management computer for later manual enrollment. You can copy and paste a certificate into an e-mail to send to friends or colleagues or you can copy and paste a certificate into a text editor and save the file on a management computer for later distribution (via floppy disk for example).
Export	Click this button and then Save in the File Download screen. The Save As screen opens, browse to the location that you want to use and click Save .
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes. You can only change the name, except in the case of a self-signed certificate, which you can also set to be the default self-signed certificate that signs the imported trusted remote host certificates.
Cancel	Click Cancel to quit and return to the My Certificates screen.

12.10 Trusted CAs

Click **CERTIFICATES**, **Trusted CAs** to open the **Trusted CAs** screen. This screen displays a summary list of certificates of the certification authorities that you have set the ZyXEL Device to accept as trusted. The ZyXEL Device accepts any valid certificate signed by a certification authority on this list as being trustworthy; thus you do not need to import any certificate that is signed by one of these certification authorities. See the following figure.

Figure 86 Trusted CAs

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 49 Trusted CAs

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
PKI Storage Space in Use	This bar displays the percentage of the ZyXEL Device's PKI storage space that is currently in use. When you are using 80% or less of the storage space, the bar is green. When the amount of space used is over 80%, the bar is red. When the bar is red, you should consider deleting expired or unnecessary certificates before adding more certificates.
#	This field displays the certificate index number. The certificates are listed in alphabetical order.
Name	This field displays the name used to identify this certificate.
Subject	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's owner, such as CN (Common Name), OU (Organizational Unit or department), O (Organization or company) and C (Country). It is recommended that each certificate have unique subject information.
Issuer	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's issuing certification authority, such as a common name, organizational unit or department, organization or company and country. With self-signed certificates, this is the same information as in the Subject field.
Valid From	This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. The text displays in red and includes a Not Yet Valid! message if the certificate has not yet become applicable.
Valid To	This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an Expiring! or Expired! message if the certificate is about to expire or has already expired.
CRL Issuer	This field displays Yes if the certification authority issues Certificate Revocation Lists for the certificates that it has issued and you have selected the Issues certificate revocation lists (CRL) check box in the certificate's details screen to have the ZyXEL Device check the CRL before trusting any certificates issued by the certification authority. Otherwise the field displays "No".
Details	Click Details to view in-depth information about the certification authority's certificate, change the certificate's name and set whether or not you want the ZyXEL Device to check a certification authority's list of revoked certificates before trusting a certificate issued by the certification authority.
Import	Click Import to open a screen where you can save the certificate of a certification authority that you trust, from your computer to the ZyXEL Device.
Delete	Click Delete to delete an existing certificate. A window display asking you to confirm that you want to delete the certificate. Note that subsequent certificates move up by one when you take this action.
Refresh	Click this button to display the current validity status of the certificates.

12.11 Importing a Trusted CA's Certificate

Click **CERTIFICATES, Trusted CAs** to open the **Trusted CAs** screen and then click **Import** to open the **Trusted CA Import** screen. Follow the instructions in this screen to save a trusted certification authority's certificate to the ZyXEL Device, see the following figure.



You must remove any spaces from the certificate's filename before you can import the certificate.

Figure 87 Trusted CA Import

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 50 Trusted CA Import

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Browse to find it.
Browse	Click Browse to find the certificate file you want to upload.
Apply	Click Apply to save the certificate on the ZyXEL Device.
Cancel	Click Cancel to quit and return to the Trusted CAs screen.

12.12 Trusted CA Certificate Details

Click **CERTIFICATES, Trusted CAs** to open the **Trusted CAs** screen. Click the details icon to open the **Trusted CA Details** screen. Use this screen to view in-depth information about the certification authority's certificate, change the certificate's name and set whether or not you want the ZyXEL Device to check a certification authority's list of revoked certificates before trusting a certificate issued by the certification authority.

Figure 88 Trusted CA Details

Name:

Property
 Check incoming certificates issued by this CA against a CRL

Certificate Path

Certificate Information

Type: Self-signed X.509 Certificate
Version: V1
Serial Number: 3558802160848854062232407011527417280
Subject: OU=Secure Server Certification Authority, O=RSA Data Security\, Inc., C=US
Issuer: OU=Secure Server Certification Authority, O=RSA Data Security\, Inc., C=US
Signature Algorithm: rsa-pkcs1-md2
Valid From: 1994 Nov 9th, 00:00:00 GMT
Valid To: 2010 Jan 7th, 23:59:59 GMT
Key Algorithm: rsaEncryption (1000 bits)
MD5 Fingerprint: 74:7b:82:03:43:f0:00:9e:6b:b3:ec:47:bf:85:a5:93
SHA1 Fingerprint: 44:63:c5:31:d7:cc:c1:00:67:94:61:2b:b6:56:d3:bf:82:57:84:6f

Certificate in PEM (Base-64) Encoded Format

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIICNDCCAeCEAKtZn5ORf5eV288mB1e3cAwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQECBQAwXzELMAkG
A1UEBhMCVVMxIDAeBgNVBAAoTF1JTQSBYXRhIFN1Y3VyaXR5L0JmMUMS4wLAYD
VQQLYyVTZW11cmUgU2VydmlvYyIEN1cnRpZmljYXRpb24gQXV0aG9yaXR5MB4XD
TkoMTEwOTAwMDAwMFoXDTEwMDAwMDAwNzIzNTk1OVowXzELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMx
IDAeBgNVBAAoTF1JTQSBYXRhIFN1Y3VyaXR5L0JmMUMS4wLAYDVQQLYyVTZW11
cmUgU2VydmlvYyIEN1cnRpZmljYXRpb24gQXV0aG9yaXR5MIGbMAOGCSqGSIb3
DQEBAAQAA4GJADCBhQJ+AJLOesGugz5aqomDV6w1AXYMr a6OLDfO6zV4ZFQD5YRAUcm/ jwj i o I I
OhaGN1XpsSECrXZogZoFokvJSyVmI1ZsiAeP94FZbYQHZAATcXY+m3dM41CJVpI
uR2nKR0TLkoRW2weFdVJVCxzOmmCsZc5nG1wZ0j13S3WYB57AgMB&AEwDQYJKoZI
```

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 51 Trusted CA Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	This field displays the identifying name of this certificate. If you want to change the name, type up to 31 characters to identify this key certificate. You may use any character (not including spaces).
Property Check incoming certificates issued by this CA against a CRL	Select this check box to have the ZyXEL Device check incoming certificates that are issued by this certification authority against a Certificate Revocation List (CRL). Clear this check box to have the ZyXEL Device not check incoming certificates that are issued by this certification authority against a Certificate Revocation List (CRL).
Certificate Path	Click the Refresh button to have this read-only text box display the end entity's certificate and a list of certification authority certificates that shows the hierarchy of certification authorities that validate the end entity's certificate. If the issuing certification authority is one that you have imported as a trusted certification authority, it may be the only certification authority in the list (along with the end entity's own certificate). The ZyXEL Device does not trust the end entity's certificate and displays "Not trusted" in this field if any certificate on the path has expired or been revoked.
Refresh	Click Refresh to display the certification path.

Table 51 Trusted CA Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Certificate Information	These read-only fields display detailed information about the certificate.
Type	This field displays general information about the certificate. CA-signed means that a Certification Authority signed the certificate. Self-signed means that the certificate's owner signed the certificate (not a certification authority). X.509 means that this certificate was created and signed according to the ITU-T X.509 recommendation that defines the formats for public-key certificates.
Version	This field displays the X.509 version number.
Serial Number	This field displays the certificate's identification number given by the certification authority.
Subject	This field displays information that identifies the owner of the certificate, such as Common Name (CN), Organizational Unit (OU), Organization (O) and Country (C).
Issuer	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's issuing certification authority, such as Common Name, Organizational Unit, Organization and Country. With self-signed certificates, this is the same information as in the Subject Name field.
Signature Algorithm	This field displays the type of algorithm that was used to sign the certificate. Some certification authorities use rsa-pkcs1-sha1 (RSA public-private key encryption algorithm and the SHA1 hash algorithm). Other certification authorities may use ras-pkcs1-md5 (RSA public-private key encryption algorithm and the MD5 hash algorithm).
Valid From	This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. The text displays in red and includes a Not Yet Valid! message if the certificate has not yet become applicable.
Valid To	This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an Expiring! or Expired! message if the certificate is about to expire or has already expired.
Key Algorithm	This field displays the type of algorithm that was used to generate the certificate's key pair (the ZyXEL Device uses RSA encryption) and the length of the key set in bits (1024 bits for example).
Subject Alternative Name	This field displays the certificate's owner's IP address (IP), domain name (DNS) or e-mail address (EMAIL).
Key Usage	This field displays for what functions the certificate's key can be used. For example, "DigitalSignature" means that the key can be used to sign certificates and "KeyEncipherment" means that the key can be used to encrypt text.
Basic Constraint	This field displays general information about the certificate. For example, Subject Type=CA means that this is a certification authority's certificate and "Path Length Constraint=1" means that there can only be one certification authority in the certificate's path.
CRL Distribution Points	This field displays how many directory servers with Lists of revoked certificates the issuing certification authority of this certificate makes available. This field also displays the domain names or IP addresses of the servers.
MD5 Fingerprint	This is the certificate's message digest that the ZyXEL Device calculated using the MD5 algorithm. You cannot use this value to verify that this is the remote host's actual certificate because the ZyXEL Device has signed the certificate; thus causing this value to be different from that of the remote host's actual certificate. See Section 12.3 on page 134 for how to verify a remote host's certificate before you import it into the ZyXEL Device.

Table 51 Trusted CA Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SHA1 Fingerprint	This is the certificate's message digest that the ZyXEL Device calculated using the SHA1 algorithm. You cannot use this value to verify that this is the remote host's actual certificate because the ZyXEL Device has signed the certificate; thus causing this value to be different from that of the remote host's actual certificate. See Section 12.3 on page 134 for how to verify a remote host's certificate before you import it into the ZyXEL Device.
Certificate in PEM (Base-64) Encoded Format	This read-only text box displays the certificate or certification request in Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format. PEM uses 64 ASCII characters to convert the binary certificate into a printable form. You can copy and paste the certificate into an e-mail to send to friends or colleagues or you can copy and paste the certificate into a text editor and save the file on a management computer for later distribution (via floppy disk for example).
Export	Click this button and then Save in the File Download screen. The Save As screen opens, browse to the location that you want to use and click Save .
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes. You can only change the name and/or set whether or not you want the ZyXEL Device to check the CRL that the certification authority issues before trusting a certificate issued by the certification authority.
Cancel	Click Cancel to quit and return to the Trusted CAs screen.

Log Screens

This chapter contains information about configuring general log settings and viewing the ZyXEL Device's logs. Refer to the appendix for example log message explanations.

13.1 Configuring View Log

The web configurator allows you to look at all of the ZyXEL Device's logs in one location.

Click **LOGS > View Log**. Use the **View Log** screen to see the logs for the categories that you selected in the **Log Settings** screen (see [Figure 90 on page 152](#)). Options include logs about system maintenance, system errors and access control.

You can view logs and alert messages in this page. Once the log entries are all used, the log will wrap around and the old logs will be deleted.

Click a column heading to sort the entries. A triangle indicates the direction of the sort order.

Figure 89 View Log

#	Time ▲	Message	Source	Destination	Notes
1	01/01/2000 01:00:10	WLAN STA Association			MACAddr:001302171185
2	01/01/2000 00:27:26	Successful HTTP login	172.23.37.27		User:admin

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 52 View Log

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Display	Select a log category from the drop down list box to display logs within the selected category. To view all logs, select All Logs . The number of categories shown in the drop down list box depends on the selection in the Log Settings page.
Time	This field displays the time the log was recorded.
Message	This field states the reason for the log.
Source	This field lists the source IP address and the port number of the incoming packet.
Destination	This field lists the destination IP address and the port number of the incoming packet.

Table 52 View Log

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Notes	This field displays additional information about the log entry.
Email Log Now	Click Email Log Now to send the log screen to the e-mail address specified in the Log Settings page.
Refresh	Click Refresh to renew the log screen.
Clear Log	Click Clear Log to clear all the logs.

13.2 Configuring Log Settings

To change your ZyXEL Device's log settings, click **LOGS > Log Settings**. The screen appears as shown.

Use the **Log Settings** screen to configure to where and when the ZyXEL Device is to send the logs and which logs and/or immediate alerts it is to send.

An alert is a type of log that warrants more serious attention. Some categories such as **System Errors** consist of both logs and alerts. You may differentiate them by their color in the **View Log** screen. Alerts are displayed in red and logs are displayed in black.

Figure 90 Log Settings

View Log **Log Settings**

Address Info:

Mail Server: (Outgoing SMTP Server NAME or IP Address)

Mail Subject:

Send log to: (E-Mail Address)

Send alerts to: (E-Mail Address)

SMTP Authentication

User NAME:

Password:

Syslog Logging:

Active

Syslog IP Address: (Server NAME or IP Address)

Log Facility:

Send Log:

Log Schedule:

Day for Sending Log:

Time for Sending Log: (hour) (minute)

Clear log after sending mail

Log

System Maintenance

System Errors

PKI

SSL/TLS

802.1x

Wireless

Rogue AP Detection

Send immediate alert

System Errors

PKI

Rogue AP Detection

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 53 Log Settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Address Info	
Mail Server	Enter the server name or the IP address of the mail server for the e-mail addresses specified below. If this field is left blank, logs and alert messages will not be sent via e-mail.
Mail Subject	Type a title that you want to be in the subject line of the log e-mail message that the ZyXEL Device sends.
Send Log to	Logs are sent to the e-mail address specified in this field. If this field is left blank, logs will not be sent via e-mail.
Send Alerts to	Enter the e-mail address where the alert messages will be sent. If this field is left blank, alert messages will not be sent via e-mail.
SMTP Authentication	If you use SMTP authentication, the mail receiver should be the owner of the SMTP account.
User NAME	If your e-mail account requires SMTP authentication, enter the username here.
Password	Enter the password associated with the above username.
Syslog Logging	Syslog logging sends a log to an external syslog server used to store logs.
Active	Click Active to enable syslog logging.
Syslog Server IP Address	Enter the server name or IP address of the syslog server that will log the selected categories of logs.
Log Facility	Select a location from the drop down list box. The log facility allows you to log the messages to different files in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for more details.
Send Log	
Log Schedule	This drop-down menu is used to configure the frequency of log messages being sent as E-mail: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Daily • Weekly • Hourly • When Log is Full • None. If the Weekly or the Daily option is selected, specify a time of day when the E-mail should be sent. If the Weekly option is selected, then also specify which day of the week the E-mail should be sent. If the When Log is Full option is selected, an alert is sent when the log fills up. If you select None , no log messages are sent.
Day for Sending Log	This field is only available when you select Weekly in the Log Schedule field. Use the drop down list box to select which day of the week to send the logs.
Time for Sending Log	Enter the time of the day in 24-hour format (for example 23:00 equals 11:00 pm) to send the logs.
Clear log after sending mail	Select the check box to clear all logs after logs and alert messages are sent via e-mail.
Log	Select the categories of logs that you want to record.
Send Immediate Alert	Select the categories of alerts for which you want the ZyXEL Device to immediately send e-mail alerts.
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings and exit this screen.
Reset	Click Reset to reconfigure all the fields in this screen.

13.3 Example Log Messages

This section provides descriptions of some example log messages.

Table 54 System Maintenance Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
Time calibration is successful	The router has adjusted its time based on information from the time server.
Time calibration failed	The router failed to get information from the time server.
DHCP client gets %s	A DHCP client got a new IP address from the DHCP server.
DHCP client IP expired	A DHCP client's IP address has expired.
DHCP server assigns %s	The DHCP server assigned an IP address to a client.
SMT Login Successfully	Someone has logged on to the router's SMT interface.
SMT Login Fail	Someone has failed to log on to the router's SMT interface.
WEB Login Successfully	Someone has logged on to the router's web configurator interface.
WEB Login Fail	Someone has failed to log on to the router's web configurator interface.
TELNET Login Successfully	Someone has logged on to the router via telnet.
TELNET Login Fail	Someone has failed to log on to the router via telnet.
FTP Login Successfully	Someone has logged on to the router via FTP.
FTP Login Fail	Someone has failed to log on to the router via FTP.

Table 55 ICMP Notes

TYPE	CODE	DESCRIPTION
0		Echo Reply
	0	Echo reply message
3		Destination Unreachable
	0	Net unreachable
	1	Host unreachable
	2	Protocol unreachable
	3	Port unreachable
	4	A packet that needed fragmentation was dropped because it was set to Don't Fragment (DF)
	5	Source route failed
4		Source Quench
	0	A gateway may discard internet datagrams if it does not have the buffer space needed to queue the datagrams for output to the next network on the route to the destination network.
5		Redirect
	0	Redirect datagrams for the Network
	1	Redirect datagrams for the Host
	2	Redirect datagrams for the Type of Service and Network
	3	Redirect datagrams for the Type of Service and Host

Table 55 ICMP Notes (continued)

TYPE	CODE	DESCRIPTION
8		Echo
	0	Echo message
11		Time Exceeded
	0	Time to live exceeded in transit
	1	Fragment reassembly time exceeded
12		Parameter Problem
	0	Pointer indicates the error
13		Timestamp
	0	Timestamp request message
14		Timestamp Reply
	0	Timestamp reply message
15		Information Request
	0	Information request message
16		Information Reply
	0	Information reply message

Table 56 Sys log

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
<pre>Mon dd hr:mm:ss hostname src="<srcIP:srcPort>" dst="<dstIP:dstPort>" msg="<msg>" note="<note>"</pre>	This message is sent by the "RAS" when this syslog is generated. The messages and notes are defined in this appendix's other charts.

13.4 Log Commands

This section provides some general examples of how to use the log commands. The items that display with your device may vary but the basic function should be the same.

Go to the command interpreter interface. [Section 23.1 on page 217](#) explains how to access and use the commands.

13.4.1 Configuring What You Want the ZyXEL Device to Log

Use the `sys logs load` command to load the log setting buffer that allows you to configure which logs the ZyXEL Device is to record.

Use `sys logs category` followed by a log category and a parameter to decide what to record

Table 57 Log Categories and Available Settings

LOG CATEGORIES	AVAILABLE PARAMETERS
error	0, 1, 2, 3

Table 57 Log Categories and Available Settings

LOG CATEGORIES	AVAILABLE PARAMETERS
mten	0, 1
Use 0 to not record logs for that category, 1 to record only logs for that category, 2 to record only alerts for that category, and 3 to record both logs and alerts for that category.	

Use the `sys logs save` command to store the settings in the ZyXEL Device (you must do this in order to record logs).

13.4.2 Displaying Logs

Use the `sys logs display` command to show all of the logs in the ZyXEL Device's log.

Use the `sys logs category display` command to show the log settings for all of the log categories.

Use the `sys logs display [log category]` command to show the logs in an individual ZyXEL Device log category.

Use the `sys logs clear` command to erase all of the ZyXEL Device's logs.

13.5 Log Command Example

This example shows how to set the ZyXEL Device to record the error logs and alerts and then view the results.

```

ras> sys logs load
ras> sys logs category error 3
ras> sys logs save
ras> sys logs display access

#.      time                source                destination          notes    message
0 | 11/11/2002 15:10:12 | 172.22.3.80:137 | 172.22.255.255:137 | ACCESS  BLOCK

```

This chapter discusses how to configure VLAN on the ZyXEL Device.

14.1 VLAN

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Stations on a logical network can belong to one or more groups. Only stations within the same group can talk to each other.

14.1.1 Management VLAN ID

The Management VLAN ID identifies the “management VLAN”. A device must be a member of this “management VLAN” in order to access and manage the ZyXEL Device. If a device is not a member of this VLAN, then that device cannot manage the ZyXEL Device.



If no devices are in the management VLAN, then no one will be able to access the ZyXEL Device and you will have to restore the default configuration file.

14.1.2 VLAN Tagging

The ZyXEL Device supports IEEE 802.1q VLAN tagging. Tagged VLAN uses an explicit tag (VLAN ID) in the MAC header of a frame to identify VLAN membership. The ZyXEL Device can identify VLAN tags for incoming Ethernet frames and add VLAN tags to outgoing Ethernet frames.



You must connect the ZyXEL Device to a VLAN-aware device that is a member of the management VLAN in order to perform management. See the Configuring Management VLAN example BEFORE you configure the VLAN screens.

14.2 Configuring VLAN

The ZyXEL Device allows you to configure VLAN based on SSID profile (wireless VLAN), and / or based on your RADIUS server (RADIUS VLAN).

- When you use wireless VLAN, the ZyXEL Device tags all packets from an SSID with the VLAN ID you set in the **Wireless VLAN** screen.
- When you use RADIUS VLAN, your RADIUS server assigns VLAN IDs to a user or user group's traffic based on the configuration in the **RADIUS VLAN** screen.
- When you use wireless VLAN and RADIUS VLAN together, the ZyXEL Device first tries to assign VLAN IDs based on RADIUS VLAN configuration. If a client's user name does not match an entry in the **RADIUS VLAN** screen, the ZyXEL Device assigns a VLAN ID based on the settings in the **Wireless VLAN** screen. See [Section 14.2.4 on page 164](#) for more information.



To use RADIUS VLAN, you must first select Enable VIRTUAL LAN and configure the Management VLAN ID in the VLAN > WIRELESS VLAN screen.

14.2.1 Wireless VLAN

Click **VLAN > WIRELESS VLAN**. The following screen appears.

Figure 91 WIRELESS VLAN

WIRELESS VLAN		RADIUS VLAN		
VIRTUAL LAN Setup				
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable VIRTUAL LAN				
Wireless VIRTUAL LAN Setup				
Management VLAN ID		1 (1 ~ 4094)		
VLAN Mapping Table				
Index	Name	SSID	VLAN ID	Second Rx VLAN ID
1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	1	0
2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	2	0
3	SSID03	ZyXEL03	3	0
4	SSID04	ZyXEL04	4	0
5	SSID05	ZyXEL05	5	0
6	SSID06	ZyXEL06	6	0
7	SSID07	ZyXEL07	7	0
8	SSID08	ZyXEL08	8	0
9	SSID09	ZyXEL09	9	0
10	SSID10	ZyXEL10	10	0
11	SSID11	ZyXEL11	11	0
12	SSID12	ZyXEL12	12	0
13	SSID13	ZyXEL13	13	0
14	SSID14	ZyXEL14	14	0
15	SSID15	ZyXEL15	15	0
16	SSID16	ZyXEL16	16	0
<input type="button" value="Apply"/>		<input type="button" value="Reset"/>		

The following table describes the labels in this screen

Table 58 WIRELESS VLAN

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Enable VIRTUAL LAN	Select this box to enable VLAN tagging.
Management VLAN ID	Enter a number from 1 to 4094 to define this VLAN group. At least one device in your network must belong to this VLAN group in order to manage the ZyXEL Device. Note: Mail and FTP servers must have the same management VLAN ID to communicate with the ZyXEL Device. See Section 14.2.3 on page 161 for more information.
VLAN Mapping Table	Use this table to have the ZyXEL Device assign VLAN tags to packets from wireless clients based on the SSID they use to connect to the ZyXEL Device.
Index	This is the index number of the SSID profile.
Name	This is the name of the SSID profile.
SSID	This is the SSID the profile uses.

Table 58 WIRELESS VLAN

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
VLAN ID	Enter a VLAN ID number from 1 to 4094. Packets coming from the WLAN using this SSID profile are tagged with the VLAN ID number by the ZyXEL Device. Different SSID profiles can use the same or different VLAN IDs. This allows you to split wireless stations into groups using similar VLAN IDs.
Second Rx VLAN ID	Enter a number from 1 to 4094, but different from the VLAN ID . Traffic received from the LAN that is tagged with this VLAN ID is sent to all SSIDs with this VLAN ID configured in the VLAN ID or Second Rx VLAN ID fields. See Section 14.2.5 on page 172 for more information.
Apply	Click this to save your changes to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to return this screen to its last-saved settings.

14.2.2 RADIUS VLAN

Click **VLAN > RADIUS VLAN**. The following screen appears.

Figure 92 RADIUS VLAN

Wireless VLAN RADIUS VLAN

RADIUS VIRTUAL LAN Setup

Block station if RADIUS server assign VLAN name error!

VLAN Mapping Table

	Index	ID	Name
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
<input type="checkbox"/>	11	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
<input type="checkbox"/>	12	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
<input type="checkbox"/>	13	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
<input type="checkbox"/>	14	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
<input type="checkbox"/>	15	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
<input type="checkbox"/>	16	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel

Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 59 RADIUS VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Block station if RADIUS server assign VLAN name error!	Select this to have the ZyXEL Device forbid access to wireless clients when the VLAN attributes sent from the RADIUS server do not match a configured Name field. When you select this check box, only users with names configured in this screen can access the network through the ZyXEL Device.
VLAN Mapping Table	Use this table to map names to VLAN IDs so that the RADIUS server can assign each user or user group a mapped VLAN ID. See your RADIUS server documentation for more information on configuring VLAN ID attributes. See Section 14.2.4 on page 164 for more information.
Index	Select a check box to enable the VLAN mapping profile.
ID	Type a VLAN ID. Incoming traffic from the WLAN is authorized and assigned a VLAN ID before it is sent to the LAN.
Name	Type a name to have the ZyXEL Device check for specific VLAN attributes on incoming messages from the RADIUS server. Access-accept packets sent by the RADIUS server contain VLAN related attributes. The configured Name fields are checked against these attributes. If a configured Name field matches these attributes, the corresponding VLAN ID is added to packets sent from this user to the LAN. If the VLAN-related attributes sent by the RADIUS server do not match a configured Name field, a wireless station is assigned the wireless VLAN ID associated with its SSID (unless the Block station if RADIUS server assign VLAN error! check box is selected).
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

14.2.3 Configuring Management VLAN Example

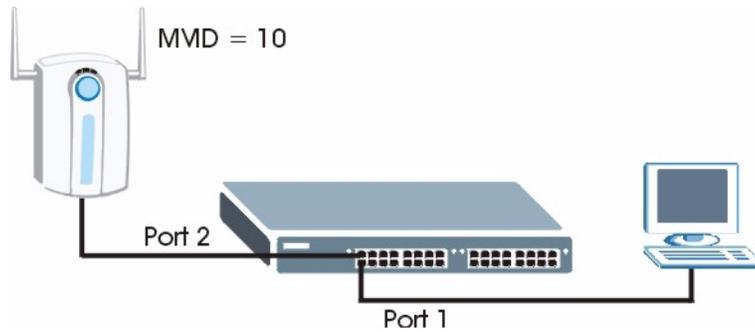
This section shows you how to create a VLAN on an Ethernet switch.

By default, the port on the ZyXEL Device is a member of the management VLAN (VLAN ID 1). The following procedure shows you how to configure a tagged VLAN.



If you misconfigure the management VLAN and lock yourself out from performing in-band management you will need to reset the ZyXEL Device.

On an Ethernet switch, create a VLAN that has the same management VLAN ID as the ZyXEL Device. The following figure has the ZyXEL Device connected to port 2 of the switch and your computer connected to port 1. The management VLAN ID is ten.

Figure 93 Management VLAN Configuration Example

Perform the following steps in the switch web configurator:

- 1 Click **VLAN** under **Advanced Application**.
- 2 Click **Static VLAN**.
- 3 Select the **ACTIVE** check box.
- 4 Type a **Name** for the VLAN ID.
- 5 Type a **VLAN Group ID**. This should be the same as the management VLAN ID on the ZyXEL Device.
- 6 Enable **Tx Tagging** on the port which you want to connect to the ZyXEL Device. Disable **Tx Tagging** on the port you are using to connect to your computer.
- 7 Under **Control**, select **Fixed** to set the port as a member of the VLAN.

Figure 94 VLAN-Aware Switch - Static VLAN

The screenshot shows the 'Static VLAN' configuration page. The 'ACTIVE' checkbox is checked. The 'Name' field contains 'VID1' and the 'VLAN Group ID' field contains '10'. Below this is a table for port configuration:

Port	Control	Tagging
1	<input type="radio"/> Normal <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
2	<input type="radio"/> Normal <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging

- 8 Click **Apply**. The following screen displays.

Figure 95 VLAN-Aware Switch

The screenshot shows a table of VLAN configurations. The first row is highlighted with a red circle, indicating the configuration for VID 10.

VID	Active	Name	Delete
10	Yes	VID1	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Yes	2	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	Yes	3	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	Yes	VLAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	Yes	cth-test	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 9 Click **VLAN Status** to display the following screen.

Figure 96 VLAN-Aware Switch - VLAN Status

VLAN Status		VLAN Port Setting																Static VLAN												
The Number Of VLAN = 5																														
Index	VID	Port Number																Elapsed Time	Status											
		2	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24	26	S2	1	3			5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25
1	10	T	-	-	-	-	T	U	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0:08:28	Static
		U	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			
2	2	T	U	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0:08:28	Static	
		-	U	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			
3	3	T	U	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0:08:28	Static	
		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			
4	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0:08:27	Static	
		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			
5	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0:08:27	Static	
		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			

Follow the instructions in the Quick Start Guide to set up your ZyXEL Device for configuration. The ZyXEL Device should be connected to the VLAN-aware switch. In the above example, the switch is using port 1 to connect to your computer and port 2 to connect to the ZyXEL Device: [Figure 93 on page 162](#).

- 1 In the ZyXEL Device web configurator click **VLAN** to open the VLAN setup screen.
- 2 Select the **Enable VLAN Tagging** check box and type a **Management VLAN ID** (10 in this example) in the field provided.
- 3 Click **Apply**.

Figure 97 VLAN Setup

WIRELESS VLAN RADIUS VLAN

VIRTUAL LAN Setup

Enable VIRTUAL LAN

Wireless VIRTUAL LAN Setup

Management VLAN ID: (0 - 4094)

VLAN Mapping Table

Index	Name	SSID	VLAN ID	Second Rx VLAN ID
1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	1	0
2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	2	0
3	SSID003	ZyXEL03	3	0
4	SSID004	ZyXEL04	4	0
5	SSID005	ZyXEL05	5	0
6	SSID006	ZyXEL06	6	0
7	SSID007	ZyXEL07	7	0
8	SSID008	ZyXEL08	8	0
9	SSID009	ZyXEL09	9	0
10	SSID10	ZyXEL10	10	0
11	SSID11	ZyXEL11	11	0
12	SSID12	ZyXEL12	12	0
13	SSID13	ZyXEL13	13	0
14	SSID14	ZyXEL14	14	0
15	SSID15	ZyXEL15	15	0
16	SSID16	ZyXEL16	16	0

- 4 The ZyXEL Device attempts to connect with a VLAN-aware device. You can now access and manage the ZyXEL Device through the Ethernet switch.



If you do not connect the ZyXEL Device to a correctly configured VLAN-aware device, you will lock yourself out of the ZyXEL Device. If this happens, you must reset the ZyXEL Device to access it again.

14.2.4 Configuring Microsoft's IAS Server Example

Dynamic VLAN assignment can be used with the ZyXEL Device. Dynamic VLAN assignment allows network administrators to assign a specific VLAN (configured on the ZyXEL Device) to an individual's Windows User Account. When a wireless station is successfully authenticated to the network, it is automatically placed into its respective VLAN.

ZyXEL uses the following standard RADIUS attributes returned from Microsoft's IAS RADIUS service to place the wireless station into the correct VLAN:

Table 60 Standard RADIUS Attributes

ATTRIBUTE NAME	TYPE	VALUE
Tunnel-Type	064	13 (decimal) – VLAN
Tunnel-Medium-Type	065	6 (decimal) – 802
Tunnel-Private-Group-ID	081	<vlan-name> (string) – either the Name you enter in the ZyXEL Device's VLAN > RADIUS VLAN screen or the number. See Figure 109 on page 170 .

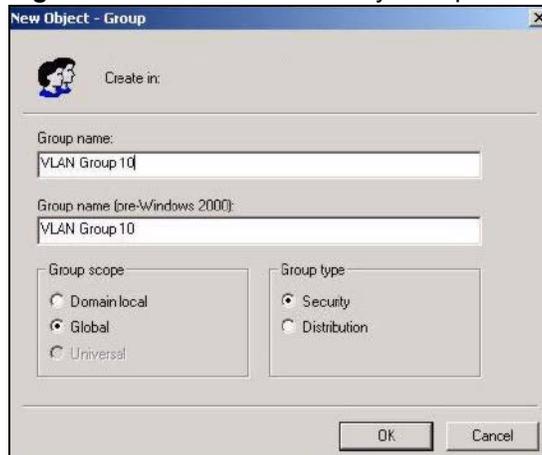
The following occurs under Dynamic VLAN Assignment:

- 1 When you configure your wireless credentials, the ZyXEL Device sends the information to the IAS server using RADIUS protocol.
- 2 Authentication by the RADIUS server is successful.
- 3 The RADIUS server sends three attributes related to this feature.
- 4 The ZyXEL Device compares these attributes with the VLAN screen mapping table.
 - 4a If the **Name**, for example “VLAN 20” is found, the mapped VLAN ID is used.
 - 4b If the **Name** is not found in the mapping table, the string in the **Tunnel-Private-Group-ID** attribute is considered as a number ID format, for example 2493. The range of the number ID (Name:string) is between 1 and 4094.
 - 4c If **a** or **b** are not matched, the ZyXEL Device uses the VLAN ID configured in the **WIRELESS VLAN** screen and the wireless station. This **VLAN ID** is independent and hence different to the **ID** in the VLAN screen.

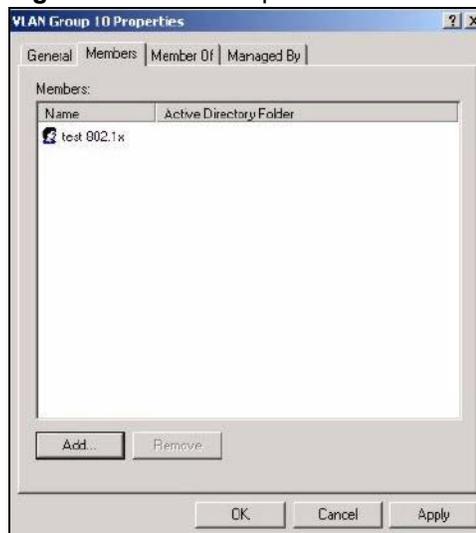
14.2.4.1 Configuring VLAN Groups

To configure a VLAN group you must first define the VLAN Groups on the Active Directory server and assign the user accounts to each VLAN Group.

- 1 Using the Active Directory Users and Computers administrative tool, create the VLAN Groups that will be used for each VLAN ID. One VLAN Group must be created for each VLAN defined on the ZyXEL Device. The VLAN Groups must be created as Global/Security groups.
 - Type a name for the **VLAN Group** that describes the VLAN Group's function.
 - Select the **Global** Group scope parameter check box.
 - Select the **Security** Group type parameter check box.
 - Click **OK**.

Figure 98 New Global Security Group

- 2 In **VLAN Group ID Properties**, click the **Members** tab.
 - The IAS uses group memberships to determine which user accounts belong to which VLAN groups. Click the **Add** button and configure the VLAN group details.
- 3 Repeat the previous step to add each VLAN group required.

Figure 99 Add Group Members

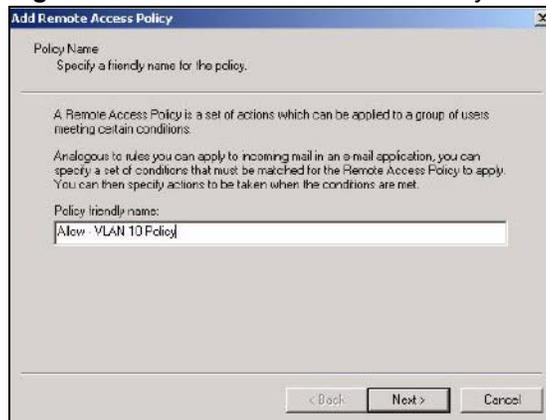
14.2.4.2 Configuring Remote Access Policies

Once the VLAN Groups have been created, the IAS Remote Access Policy needs to be defined. This allows the IAS to compare the user account being authenticated against the group memberships of each VLAN Group.

- 1 Using the **Remote Access Policy** option on the Internet Authentication Service management interface, create a new VLAN Policy for each VLAN Group defined in the previous section. The order of the remote access policies is important. The most specific policies should be placed at the top of the policy list and the most general at the bottom. For example, if the Day-And-Time Restriction policy is still present, it should be moved to the bottom or deleted to allow the VLAN Group policies to take precedence.

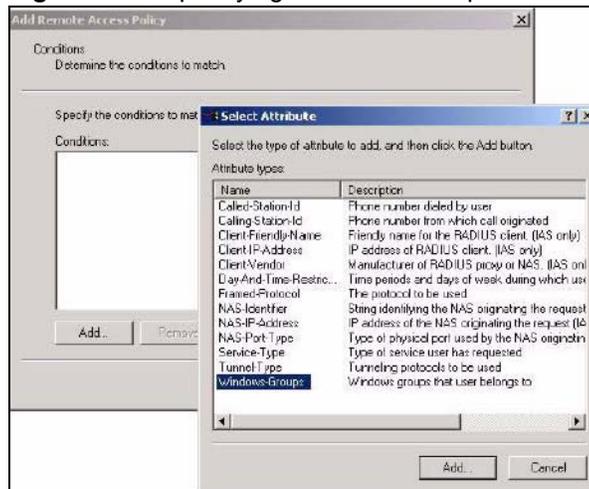
- Right click **Remote Access Policy** and select **New Remote Access Policy**.
- Enter a **Policy friendly name** that describes the policy. Each Remote Access Policy will be matched to one VLAN Group. An example may be, **Allow - VLAN 10 Policy**.
- Click **Next**.

Figure 100 New Remote Access Policy for VLAN Group

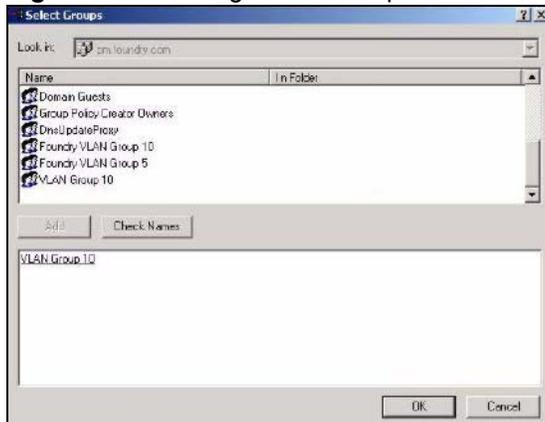


- 2 The **Conditions** window displays. Select **Add** to add a condition for this policy to act on.
- 3 In the **Select Attribute** screen, click **Windows-Groups** and the **Add** button.

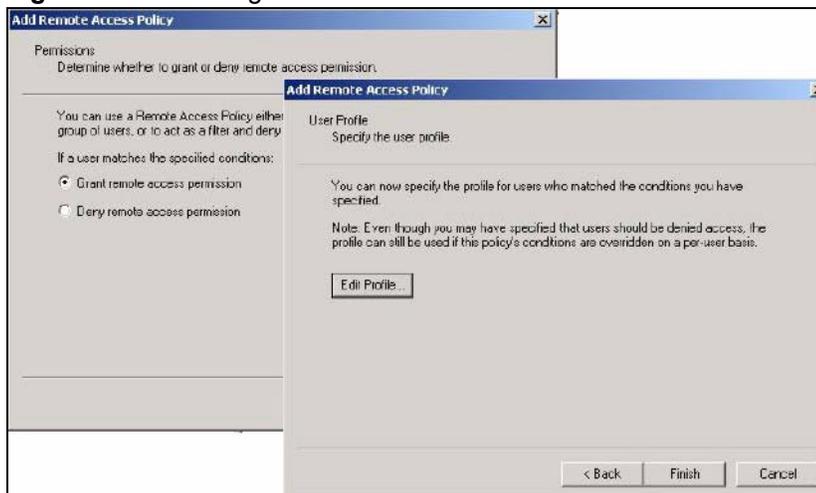
Figure 101 Specifying Windows-Group Condition



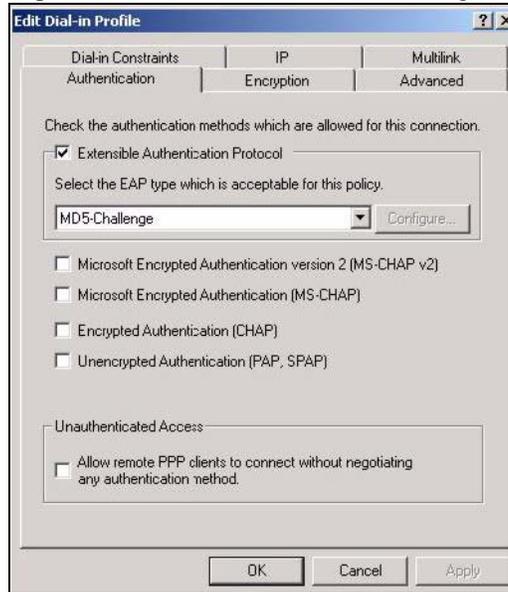
- 4 The **Select Groups** window displays. Select a remote access policy and click the **Add** button. The policy is added to the field below. Only one VLAN Group should be associated with each policy.
- 5 Click **OK** and **Next** in the next few screens to accept the group value.

Figure 102 Adding VLAN Group

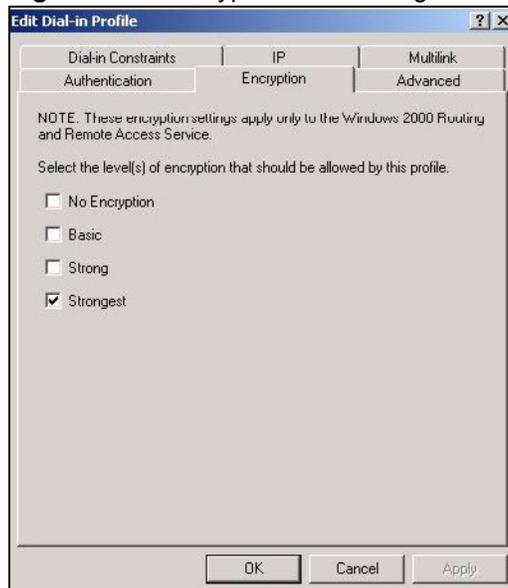
- 6** When the **Permissions** options screen displays, select **Grant remote access permission**.
- Click **Next** to grant access based on group membership.
 - Click the **Edit Profile** button.

Figure 103 Granting Permissions and User Profile Screens

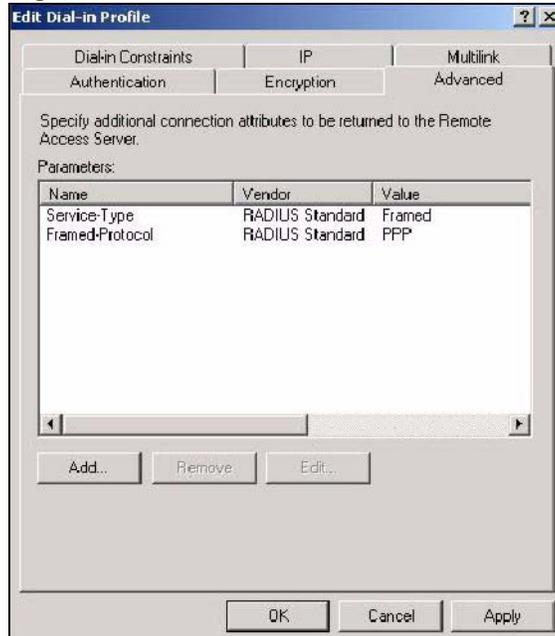
- 7** The **Edit Dial-in Profile** screen displays. Click the **Authentication** tab and select the **Extensible Authentication Protocol** check box.
- Select an EAP type depending on your authentication needs from the drop-down list box.
 - Clear the check boxes for all other authentication types listed below the drop-down list box.

Figure 104 Authentication Tab Settings

- 8 Click the **Encryption** tab. Select the **Strongest** encryption option. This step is not required for EAP-MD5, but is performed as a safeguard.

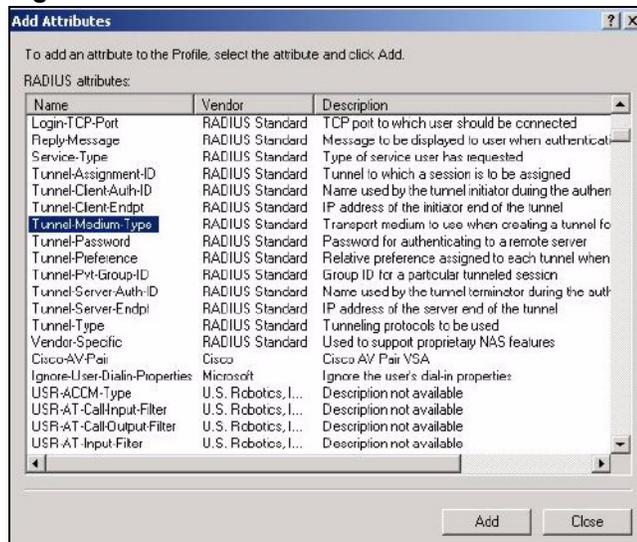
Figure 105 Encryption Tab Settings

- 9 Click the **IP** tab and select the **Client may request an IP address** check box for DHCP support.
- 10 Click the **Advanced** tab. The current default parameters returned to the ZyXEL Device should be **Service-Type** and **Framed-Protocol**.
 - Click the **Add** button to add an additional three RADIUS VLAN attributes required for 802.1X Dynamic VLAN Assignment.

Figure 106 Connection Attributes Screen

11 The RADIUS Attribute screen displays. From the list, three RADIUS attributes will be added:

- Tunnel-Medium-Type
 - Tunnel-Pvt-Group-ID
 - Tunnel-Type
- Click the **Add** button
 - Select **Tunnel-Medium-Type**
 - Click the **Add** button.

Figure 107 RADIUS Attribute Screen

12 The **Enumerable Attribute Information** screen displays. Select the **802** value from the **Attribute** value drop-down list box.

- Click **OK**.

Figure 108 802 Attribute Setting for Tunnel-Medium-Type

13 Return to the **RADIUS Attribute Screen** shown as [Figure 107 on page 169](#).

- Select **Tunnel-Pvt-Group-ID**.
- Click **Add**.

14 The **Attribute Information** screen displays.

- In the **Enter the attribute value in:** field select **String** and type a number in the range 1 to 4094 or a **Name** for this policy. This **Name** should match a name in the VLAN mapping table on the ZyXEL Device. Wireless stations belonging to the VLAN Group specified in this policy will be given a **VLAN ID** specified in the ZyXEL Device VLAN table.
- Click **OK**.

Figure 109 VLAN ID Attribute Setting for Tunnel-Pvt-Group-ID

15 Return to the **RADIUS Attribute Screen** shown as [Figure 107 on page 169](#).

- Select **Tunnel-Type**.
- Click **Add**.

16 The **Enumerable Attribute Information** screen displays.

- Select **Virtual LANs (VLAN)** from the attribute value drop-down list box.
- Click **OK**.

Figure 110 VLAN Attribute Setting for Tunnel-Type

Enumerable Attribute Information

Attribute name:
Tunnel-Type

Attribute number:
64

Attribute format:
Enumerator

Attribute value:
Virtual LANs (VLAN)

OK Cancel

17 Return to the **RADIUS Attribute Screen** shown as [Figure 107](#) on page 169.

- Click the **Close** button.
- The completed **Advanced** tab configuration should resemble the following screen.

Figure 111 Completed Advanced Tab

Allow - VLAN Group 10 Properties

Settings

Policy name:

Specify the condition:
Windows:Groups in

Add...

If a user matches th
 Grant remote c
 Deny remote c
 Access will be is overridden c

Edit Profile...

Edit Dial-in Profile

Dial-in Constraints | IP | Multilink
 Authentication | Encryption | Advanced

Specify additional connection attributes to be returned to the Remote Access Server.

Parameters:

Name	Vendor	Value
Service-Type	RADIUS Standard	Framed
Framed-Protocol	RADIUS Standard	PPP
Tunnel-Medium-Type	RADIUS Standard	802 (includes all 802 m
Tunnel-Pvt-Group-ID	RADIUS Standard	10
Tunnel-Type	RADIUS Standard	Virtual LANs (VLAN)

Add... Remove... Edit...

OK Cancel Apply

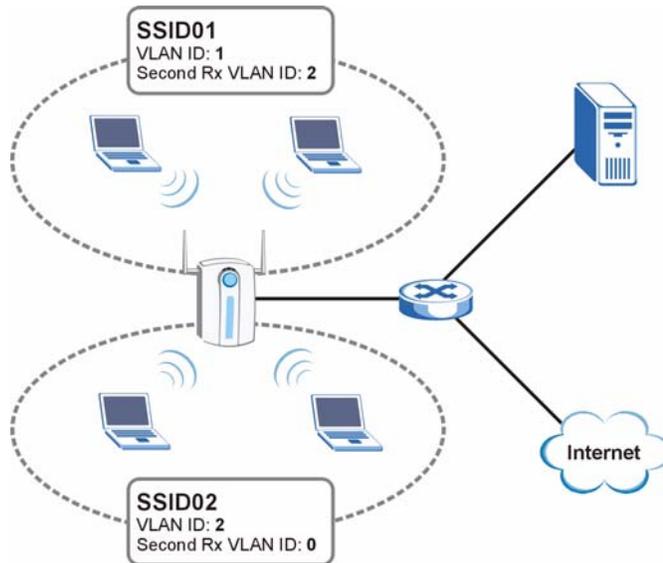


Repeat the Configuring Remote Access Policies procedure for each VLAN Group defined in the Active Directory. Remember to place the most general Remote Access Policies at the bottom of the list and the most specific at the top of the list.

14.2.5 Second Rx VLAN ID Example

In this example, the ZyXEL Device is configured to tag packets from **SSID01** with VLAN ID 1 and tag packets from **SSID02** with VLAN ID 2. **VLAN 1** and **VLAN 2** have access to a server, **S**, and the Internet, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 112 Second Rx VLAN ID Example



Packets sent from the server **S** back to the switch are tagged with a VLAN ID (incoming VLAN ID). These incoming VLAN packets are forwarded to the ZyXEL Device. The ZyXEL Device compares the VLAN ID in the packet header with each SSID's configured VLAN ID and second Rx VLAN ID settings.

In this example, **SSID01**'s second Rx VLAN ID is set to **2**. All incoming packets tagged with VLAN ID **2** are forwarded to **SSID02**, and also to **SSID01**. However, **SSID02** has no second Rx VLAN ID configured, and the ZyXEL Device forwards only packets tagged with VLAN ID **2** to it.

14.2.5.1 Second Rx VLAN Setup Example

The following steps show you how to setup a second Rx VLAN ID on the ZyXEL Device.

- 1 Log into the Web Configurator.
- 2 Click **VLAN > Wireless VLAN**.
- 3 If VLAN is not already enabled, click **Enable Virtual LAN** and set up the **Management VLAN ID** (see [Section 14.1.1](#) on page 157).



If no devices are in the management VLAN, then no one will be able to access the ZyXEL Device and you will have to restore the default configuration file.

- 4 Select the SSID profile you want to configure (**SSID03** in this example), and enter the **VLAN ID** number (between 1 and 4094).

- 5 Enter a **Second Rx VLAN ID**. The following screen shows **SSID03** tagged with a **VLAN ID** of 3 and a **Second Rx VLAN ID** of 4.

Figure 113 Configuring SSID: Second Rx VLAN ID Example

WIRELESS VLAN RADIUS VLAN

VIRTUAL LAN Setup

Enable VIRTUAL LAN

Wireless VIRTUAL LAN Setup

Management VLAN ID (1 ~ 4094)

VLAN Mapping Table

Index	Name	SSID	VLAN ID	Second Rx VLAN ID
1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	<input type="text" value="2"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
3	SSID03	ZyXEL03	<input type="text" value="3"/>	<input type="text" value="4"/>
4	SSID04	ZyXEL04	<input type="text" value="4"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
5	SSID05	ZyXEL05	<input type="text" value="5"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
6	SSID06	ZyXEL06	<input type="text" value="6"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
15	SSID15	ZyXEL15	<input type="text" value="15"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
16	SSID16	ZyXEL16	<input type="text" value="16"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>

- 6 Click **Apply** to save these settings. Outgoing packets from clients in **SSID03** are tagged with a **VLAN ID** of 3, and incoming packets with a **VLAN ID** of 3 or 4 are forwarded to **SSID03**.

Maintenance

This chapter displays system information such as ZyNOS firmware, port IP addresses and port traffic statistics.

15.1 Maintenance Overview

The maintenance screens can help you view system information, upload new firmware, manage configuration and restart your ZyXEL Device.

15.2 System Status Screen

Click **MAINTENANCE** to open the **System Status** screen, where you can use to monitor your ZyXEL Device. Note that these labels are READ-ONLY and are meant to be used for diagnostic purposes.

Figure 114 System Status

Status	Association List	Channel Usage	F/W Upload	Configuration	Restart
System Name : NWA-3100 ZyNOS Firmware Version: V3.60 08/18/2006 IP Address : 172.23.37.252 DHCP : None IP Subnet Mask : 255.255.255.0 <div style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="Show Statistics"/> </div>					

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 61 System Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	This is the System Name you can configure in the SYSTEM > General screen. It is for identification purposes
ZyNOS Firmware Version	This is the ZyNOS Firmware version and date created. ZyNOS is ZyXEL's proprietary Network Operating System design.
IP Address	This is the Ethernet port IP address.
IP Subnet Mask	This is the Ethernet port subnet mask.
DHCP	This is the Ethernet port DHCP role - Client or None .
Show Statistics	Click Show Statistics to see router performance statistics such as number of packets sent and number of packets received for each port.

15.2.1 System Statistics

Read-only information here includes port status, packet specific statistics and bridge link status. Also provided are "system up time" and "poll interval(s)". The **Poll Interval** field is configurable.

Figure 115 System Status: Show Statistics

Port	Status	TxPkts	RxPkts	Collisions	Tx B/s	Rx B/s	Up Time
LAN	100M/Full	1963	1251	0	1226	838	0:33:35
WLAN	54M	1303	0	0	0	0	0:35:07

Bridge Link #	Active	Remote Bridge MAC Address	Status	TxPkts	RxPkts
1	No	00:00:00:00:00:00	Down	0	0
2	No	00:00:00:00:00:00	Down	0	0
3	No	00:00:00:00:00:00	Down	0	0
4	No	00:00:00:00:00:00	Down	0	0
5	No	00:00:00:00:00:00	Down	0	0

System Up Time : 0:35:12

Poll Interval(s) : **sec**

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 62 System Status: Show Statistics

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This is the Ethernet or wireless port.
Status	This shows the port speed and duplex setting if you are using Ethernet encapsulation for the Ethernet port. Ethernet port connections can be in half-duplex or full-duplex mode. Full-duplex refers to a device's ability to send and receive simultaneously, while half-duplex indicates that traffic can flow in only one direction at a time. The Ethernet port must use the same speed or duplex mode setting as the peer Ethernet port in order to connect. This shows the transmission speed only for the wireless port.
TxPkts	This is the number of transmitted packets on this port.
RxPkts	This is the number of received packets on this port.
Collisions	This is the number of collisions on this port.
Tx B/s	This shows the transmission speed in bytes per second on this port.
Rx B/s	This shows the reception speed in bytes per second on this port.
Up Time	This is total amount of time the line has been up.
Bridge Link #	This is the index number of the bridge connection.
Active	This shows whether the bridge connection is activated or not.
Remote Bridge MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the peer device in bridge mode.

Table 62 System Status: Show Statistics

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	This shows the current status of the bridge connection, which can be Up or Down .
TxPkts	This is the number of transmitted packets on the wireless bridge.
RxPkts	This is the number of received packets on the wireless bridge.
System Up Time	This is the total time the ZyXEL Device has been on.
Poll Interval(s)	Enter the time interval for refreshing statistics.
Set Interval	Click this button to apply the new poll interval you entered above.
Stop	Click this button to stop refreshing statistics.

15.3 Association List

View the wireless stations that are currently associated with the ZyXEL Device in the **Association List** screen.

Click **MAINTENANCE** and then the **Association List** tab to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 116 Association List

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 63 Association List

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Stations	
#	This is the index number of an associated wireless station.
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address of an associated wireless station.
Association Time	This field displays the time a wireless station first associated with the ZyXEL Device.
Name (SSID)	This field displays the SSID to which the wireless station is associated.
WDS Link	This screen displays when bridge mode is activated on the ZyXEL Device.
Link No	This field displays the index number of a bridge connection on the WDS.
MAC Address	This field displays a remote bridge MAC address.
Link Time	This field displays the WDS link up-time.
Privacy	This field displays whether traffic on the WDS is encrypted or not.
Refresh	Click Refresh to reload the screen.

15.4 Channel Usage

The **Channel Usage** screen shows whether a channel is used by another wireless network or not. If a channel is being used, you should select a channel removed from it by five channels to completely avoid overlap.

Click **MAINTENANCE** and then the **Channel Usage** tab to display the screen shown next.

Wait a moment while the ZyXEL Device compiles the information.

Figure 117 Channel Usage

Status	Association List	Channel Usage	F/W Upload	Configuration	Restart																														
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>SSID</th> <th>MAC Address</th> <th>Channel</th> <th>Signal</th> <th>Network Mode</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ZyXEL_1237</td> <td>00:13:49:00:00:01</td> <td>6</td> <td>23 %</td> <td>Infra</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ZyXEL</td> <td>00:13:49:00:00:05</td> <td>6</td> <td>82 %</td> <td>Infra</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Wireless</td> <td>00:A0:C5:00:07:77</td> <td>6</td> <td>42 %</td> <td>Infra</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Wireless</td> <td>00:A0:C5:5C:AF:7A</td> <td>11</td> <td>25 %</td> <td>Infra</td> </tr> <tr> <td>A-3214-G3000</td> <td>00:A0:C5:F5:02:06</td> <td>11</td> <td>22 %</td> <td>Infra, WEP</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	SSID	MAC Address	Channel	Signal	Network Mode	ZyXEL_1237	00:13:49:00:00:01	6	23 %	Infra	ZyXEL	00:13:49:00:00:05	6	82 %	Infra	Wireless	00:A0:C5:00:07:77	6	42 %	Infra	Wireless	00:A0:C5:5C:AF:7A	11	25 %	Infra	A-3214-G3000	00:A0:C5:F5:02:06	11	22 %	Infra, WEP			
SSID	MAC Address	Channel	Signal	Network Mode																															
ZyXEL_1237	00:13:49:00:00:01	6	23 %	Infra																															
ZyXEL	00:13:49:00:00:05	6	82 %	Infra																															
Wireless	00:A0:C5:00:07:77	6	42 %	Infra																															
Wireless	00:A0:C5:5C:AF:7A	11	25 %	Infra																															
A-3214-G3000	00:A0:C5:F5:02:06	11	22 %	Infra, WEP																															
<input type="button" value="Refresh"/>																																			

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 64 Channel Usage

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SSID	This is the Service Set IDentification name of the AP in an Infrastructure wireless network or wireless station in an Ad-Hoc wireless network. For our purposes, we define an Infrastructure network as a wireless network that uses an AP and an Ad-Hoc network (also known as Independent Basic Service Set (IBSS)) as one that doesn't. See the Wireless Configuration and Roaming chapter for more information on basic service sets (BSS) and extended service sets (ESS).
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address of the AP in an Infrastructure wireless network. It is randomly generated (so ignore it) in an Ad-Hoc wireless network.
Channel	This is the index number of the channel currently used by the associated AP in an Infrastructure wireless network or wireless station in an Ad-Hoc wireless network.
Signal	This field displays the strength of the AP's signal. If you must choose a channel that's currently in use, choose one with low signal strength for minimum interference.
Network Mode	"Network mode" in this screen refers to your wireless LAN infrastructure (refer to the Wireless LAN chapter) and security setup.
Refresh	Click Refresh to reload the screen.

15.5 F/W Upload Screen

Find firmware at www.zyxel.com in a file that (usually) uses the system model name with a "*.bin" extension, for example "NWA-3100.bin". The upload process uses HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) and may take up to two minutes. After a successful upload, the system will reboot. See the Firmware and Configuration File Maintenance chapter for upgrading firmware using FTP/TFTP commands.

Click **MAINTENANCE > F/W Upload**. Follow the instructions in this screen to upload firmware to your ZyXEL Device.

Figure 118 Firmware Upload

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 65 Firmware Upload

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Browse ... to find it.
Browse...	Click Browse... to find the .bin file you want to upload. Remember that you must decompress compressed (.zip) files before you can upload them.
Upload	Click Upload to begin the upload process. This process may take up to two minutes.



Do not turn off the ZyXEL Device while firmware upload is in progress!

After you see the **Firmware Upload in Process** screen, wait two minutes before logging into the ZyXEL Device again.

Figure 119 Firmware Upload In Process

The ZyXEL Device automatically restarts in this time causing a temporary network disconnect. In some operating systems, you may see the following icon on your desktop.

Figure 120 Network Temporarily Disconnected



After two minutes, log in again and check your new firmware version in the **System Status** screen.

If the upload was not successful, the following screen will appear. Click **Return** to go back to the **F/W Upload** screen.

Figure 121 Firmware Upload Error



15.6 Configuration Screen

See [Chapter 22 on page 205](#) for information on how to transfer configuration files using FTP/TFTP commands.

Click **MAINTENANCE > Configuration**. Information related to factory defaults, backup configuration, and restoring configuration appears as shown next.

Figure 122 Configuration

Status	Association List	Channel Usage	F/W Upload	Configuration	Restart
Backup Configuration					
Click Backup to save the current configuration of your system to your computer.					
<input type="button" value="Backup"/>					
Restore Configuration					
To restore a previously saved configuration file to your system, browse to the location of the configuration file and click Upload .					
File Path: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/>					
<input type="button" value="Upload"/>					
Back to Factory Defaults					
Click Reset to clear all user-entered configuration information and return to factory defaults.					
After resetting, the					
- Password will be 1234					
- This device can be reached by IP address 192.168.1.2					
<input type="button" value="Reset"/>					

15.6.1 Backup Configuration

Backup configuration allows you to back up (save) the ZyXEL Device's current configuration to a file on your computer. Once your ZyXEL Device is configured and functioning properly, it is highly recommended that you back up your configuration file before making configuration changes. The backup configuration file will be useful in case you need to return to your previous settings.

Click **Backup** to save the ZyXEL Device's current configuration to your computer.

15.6.2 Restore Configuration

Restore configuration allows you to upload a new or previously saved configuration file from your computer to your ZyXEL Device.

Table 66 Restore Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Browse ... to find it.
Browse...	Click Browse... to find the file you want to upload. Remember that you must decompress compressed (.ZIP) files before you can upload them.
Upload	Click Upload to begin the upload process.



Do not turn off the ZyXEL Device while configuration file upload is in progress.

After you see a “restore configuration successful” screen, you must then wait one minute before logging into the ZyXEL Device again.

Figure 123 Configuration Upload Successful



The ZyXEL Device automatically restarts in this time causing a temporary network disconnect. In some operating systems, you may see the following icon on your desktop.

Figure 124 Network Temporarily Disconnected



If you uploaded the default configuration file you may need to change the IP address of your computer to be in the same subnet as that of the default ZyXEL Device IP address (192.168.1.2). See your Quick Start Guide for details on how to set up your computer's IP address.

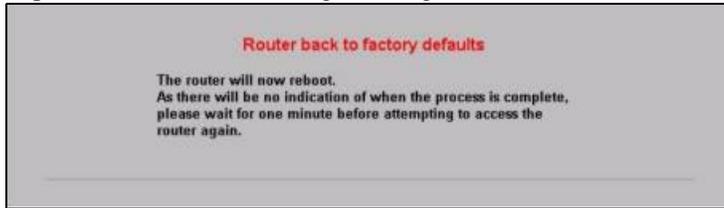
If the upload was not successful, the following screen will appear. Click **Return** to go back to the **Configuration** screen.

Figure 125 Configuration Upload Error



15.6.3 Back to Factory Defaults

Pressing the **Reset** button in this section clears all user-entered configuration information and returns the ZyXEL Device to its factory defaults as shown on the screen. The following warning screen will appear.

Figure 126 Reset Warning Message

You can also press the **RESET** button to reset your ZyXEL Device to its factory default settings. Refer to [Section 2.2 on page 40](#) for more information.

15.7 Restart Screen

System restart allows you to reboot the ZyXEL Device without turning the power off.

Click **MAINTENANCE Restart**. Click **Restart** to have the ZyXEL Device reboot. This does not affect the ZyXEL Device's configuration.

Figure 127 Restart Screen

PART III

SMT and

Troubleshooting

Introducing the SMT (187)
General Setup (191)
LAN Setup (193)
SNMP Configuration (195)
System Password (197)
System Information and Diagnosis (199)
Firmware and Configuration File Maintenance (205)
System Maintenance and Information (217)
Troubleshooting (223)

Introducing the SMT

This chapter describes how to access the SMT and provides an overview of its menus.

16.1 Connect to your ZyXEL Device Using Telnet

The following procedure details how to telnet into your ZyXEL Device.

- 1 In Windows, click **Start** (usually in the bottom left corner), **Run** and then type “telnet 192.168.1.2” (the default IP address) and click **OK**.
- 2 For your first login, enter the default password “1234”. As you type the password, the screen displays an asterisk “*” for each character you type.

Figure 128 Login Screen

```

Password : xxxx
  
```

- 3 After entering the password you will see the main menu.

Please note that if there is no activity for longer than five minutes (default timeout period) after you log in, your ZyXEL Device will automatically log you out. You will then have to telnet into the ZyXEL Device again. You can use the web configurator or the CI commands to change the inactivity time out period.

16.2 Changing the System Password

Change the ZyXEL Device’s default password by following the steps shown next.

- 1 From the main menu, enter 23 to display **Menu 23 – System Password** as shown next.
- 2 Type your existing system password in the **Old Password** field, and press [ENTER].

Figure 129 Menu 23 System Password

```

Menu 23 - System Password

Old Password= ?
New Password= ?
Retype to confirm= ?

Enter here to CONFIRM or ESC to CANCEL:
  
```

- 3 Type your new system password in the **New Password** field (up to 30 characters), and press [ENTER].
- 4 Re-type your new system password in the **Retype to confirm** field for confirmation and press [ENTER].

Note that as you type a password, the screen displays an asterisk “*” for each character you type.

16.3 SMT Menu Overview Example

The following table gives you an overview of your ZyXEL Device’s various SMT menus.

Table 67 SMT Menus Overview

MENUS	SUB MENUS	
1 General Setup		
3 LAN Setup	3.2 TCP/IP Setup	
22 SNMP Configuration		
23 System Password		
24 System Maintenance	24.1 System Status	
	24.2 System Information and Console Port Speed	24.2.1 System Information
		24.2.2 Console Port Speed
	24.3 Log and Trace	24.3.1 View Error Log
	24.4 Diagnostic	
	24.5 Backup Configuration	
	24.6 Restore Configuration	
	24.7 Upload Firmware	24.7.1 Upload System Firmware
		24.7.2 Upload System Configuration File
	24.8 Command Interpreter Mode	
24.10 Time and Date Setting		
24.11 Remote Management Setup		

16.4 Navigating the SMT Interface

The SMT (System Management Terminal) is the interface that you use to configure your ZyXEL Device.

Several operations that you should be familiar with before you attempt to modify the configuration are listed in the table below.

Table 68 Main Menu Commands

OPERATION	KEYSTROKE	DESCRIPTION
Move down to another menu	[ENTER]	To move forward to a submenu, type in the number of the desired submenu and press [ENTER].
Move up to a previous menu	[ESC]	Press [ESC] to move back to the previous menu.
Move to a "hidden" menu	Press [SPACE BAR] to change No to Yes then press [ENTER].	Fields beginning with "Edit" lead to hidden menus and have a default setting of No . Press [SPACE BAR] once to change No to Yes , then press [ENTER] to go to the "hidden" menu.
Move the cursor	[ENTER] or [UP]/[DOWN] arrow keys.	Within a menu, press [ENTER] to move to the next field. You can also use the [UP]/[DOWN] arrow keys to move to the previous and the next field, respectively.
Entering information	Type in or press [SPACE BAR], then press [ENTER].	You need to fill in two types of fields. The first requires you to type in the appropriate information. The second allows you to cycle through the available choices by pressing [SPACE BAR].
Required fields	<?> or ChangeMe	All fields with the symbol <?> must be filled in order to be able to save the new configuration. All fields with ChangeMe must not be left blank in order to be able to save the new configuration.
N/A fields	<N/A>	Some of the fields in the SMT will show a <N/A>. This symbol refers to an option that is Not Applicable.
Save your configuration	[ENTER]	Save your configuration by pressing [ENTER] at the message "Press ENTER to confirm or ESC to cancel". Saving the data on the screen will take you, in most cases to the previous menu.
Exit the SMT	Type 99, then press [ENTER].	Type 99 at the main menu prompt and press [ENTER] to exit the SMT interface.

After you enter the password, the SMT displays the main menu, as shown next.

Figure 130 SMT Main Menu

Copyright (c) 1994 - 2006 ZyXEL Communications Corp.	
NWA-3100 Main Menu	
Getting Started	Advanced Management
1. General Setup	22. SNMP Configuration
3. LAN Setup	23. System Security
	24. System Maintenance
	99. Exit
Enter Menu Selection Number:	

16.4.1 System Management Terminal Interface Summary

Table 69 Main Menu Summary

#	MENU TITLE	DESCRIPTION
1	General Setup	Use this menu to set up your general information.
3	LAN Setup	Use this menu to set up your LAN and WLAN connection.
22	SNMP Configuration	Use this menu to set up SNMP related parameters.
23	System Password	Use this menu to change your password.
24	System Maintenance	This menu provides system status, diagnostics, software upload, etc.
99	Exit	Use this to exit the SMT.

General Setup

The chapter shows you the information on general setup.

17.1 General Setup

Menu 1 – General Setup contains administrative and system-related information (shown next). The **System Name** field is for identification purposes.

The **Domain Name** entry is what is propagated to the DHCP clients on the LAN. While you must enter the host name (System Name) on each individual computer, the domain name can be assigned from the ZyXEL Device via DHCP.

17.1.1 Procedure To Configure Menu 1

Enter 1 in the Main Menu to open **Menu 1 – General Setup** as shown next.

Figure 131 Menu 1 General Setup

```

Menu 1 - General Setup

System Name= NWA-3100
Domain Name=
First System DNS Server= From DHCP
  IP Address= N/A
Second System DNS Server= None
  IP Address= N/A
Third System DNS Server= None
  IP Address= N/A

```

Fill in the required fields. Refer to the following table for more information about these fields.

Table 70 Menu 1 General Setup

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
System Name	Choose a descriptive name for identification purposes. This name can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters long. Spaces are not allowed, but dashes "-" and underscores "_" are accepted.
Domain Name	This is not a required field. Leave this field blank or enter the domain name here if you know it.

Table 70 Menu 1 General Setup

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
First/Second/Third System DNS Server	Press [SPACE BAR] to select From DHCP , User Defined or None and press [ENTER]. These fields are not available on all models.
IP Address	Enter the IP addresses of the DNS servers. This field is available when you select User-Defined in the field above.
When you have completed this menu, press [ENTER] at the prompt "Press ENTER to Confirm..." to save your configuration, or press [ESC] at any time to cancel.	

LAN Setup

This chapter shows you how to configure the LAN on your ZyXEL Device.

18.1 LAN Setup

This section describes how to configure the Ethernet using **Menu 3 – LAN Setup**. From the main menu, enter “3” to display menu 3.

Figure 132 Menu 3 LAN Setup

```
Menu 3 - LAN Setup

2. TCP/IP Setup

Enter Menu Selection Number:
```

18.2 TCP/IP Ethernet Setup

Use menu 3.2 to configure your ZyXEL Device for TCP/IP.

To edit menu 3.2, enter 3 from the main menu to display **Menu 3-LAN Setup**. When menu 3 appears, press 2 and press [ENTER] to display **Menu 3.2-TCP/IP Setup**, as shown next:

Figure 133 Menu 3.2 TCP/IP Setup

```
Menu 3.2 - TCP/IP Setup

IP Address Assignment= Static
IP Address= 192.168.1.2
IP Subnet Mask= 255.255.255.0
Gateway IP Address= 0.0.0.0
```

Follow the instructions in the following table on how to configure the fields in this menu.

Table 71 Menu 3.2 TCP/IP Setup

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
IP Address Assignment	Press [SPACE BAR] and then [ENTER] to select Dynamic to have the ZyXEL Device obtain an IP address from a DHCP server. You must know the IP address assigned to the ZyXEL Device (by the DHCP server) to access the ZyXEL Device again. Select Static to give the ZyXEL Device a fixed, unique IP address. Enter a subnet mask appropriate to your network and the gateway IP address if applicable.
IP Address	Enter the (LAN) IP address of your ZyXEL Device in dotted decimal notation
IP Subnet Mask	Your ZyXEL Device will automatically calculate the subnet mask based on the IP address that you assign. Unless you are implementing subnetting, use the subnet mask computed by the ZyXEL Device.
Gateway IP Address	Type the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your ZyXEL Device that will forward the packet to the destination. On the LAN, the gateway must be a router on the same network segment as your ZyXEL Device.
When you have completed this menu, press [ENTER] at the prompt "Press ENTER to Confirm..." to save your configuration, or press [ESC] at any time to cancel.	

SNMP Configuration

This chapter explains SNMP Configuration menu 22. See the web configurator chapter on SNMP for background information.

19.1 SNMP Configuration

To configure SNMP, select option 22 from the main menu to open **Menu 22 – SNMP Configuration** as shown next. The “community” for Get, Set and Trap fields is SNMP terminology for password.

Figure 134 Menu 22 SNMP Configuration

```

Menu 22 - SNMP Configuration

SNMP:
  Get Community= public
  Set Community= public
  Trusted Host= 0.0.0.0
  Trap:
    Community= public
    Destination= 0.0.0.0

Press ENTER to Confirm or ESC to Cancel:

```

The following table describes the SNMP configuration parameters.

Table 72 Menu 22 SNMP Configuration

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
SNMP:	
Get Community	Type the Get Community , which is the password for the incoming Get- and GetNext requests from the management station.
Set Community	Type the Set Community , which is the password for incoming Set requests from the management station.
Trusted Host	If you enter a trusted host, your ZyXEL Device will only respond to SNMP messages from this address. A blank (default) field means your ZyXEL Device will respond to all SNMP messages it receives, regardless of source.
Trap:	
Community	Type the trap community, which is the password sent with each trap to the SNMP manager.

Table 72 Menu 22 SNMP Configuration

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Destination	Type the IP address of the station to send your SNMP traps to.
When you have completed this menu, press [ENTER] at the prompt "Press ENTER to confirm or ESC to cancel" to save your configuration or press [ESC] to cancel and go back to the previous screen.	

System Password

This chapter describes how to configure the ZyXEL Device's system password.

20.1 System Password

You can configure the system password in this menu.

Figure 135 Menu 23 System Password

```
Menu 23 - System Password

Old Password= ****
New Password= ?
Retype to confirm= ?
Enter here to CONFIRM or ESC to CANCEL:
```

You should change the default password. If you forget your password you have to restore the default configuration file. Refer to [Section 16.2 on page 187](#) and [Section 2.2 on page 40](#).

System Information and Diagnosis

This chapter covers the information and diagnostic tools in SMT menus 24.1 to 24.4.

These tools include updates on system status, port status, log and trace capabilities and upgrades for the system software. This chapter describes how to use these tools in detail.

Type 24 in the main menu and press [ENTER] to open **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 136 Menu 24 System Maintenance

```

Menu 24 - System Maintenance

1. System Status
2. System Information and Console Port Speed
3. Log and Trace
4. Diagnostic
5. Backup Configuration
6. Restore Configuration
7. Upload Firmware
8. Command Interpreter Mode

10. Time and Date Setting
11. Remote Management Setup

Enter Menu Selection Number:

```

21.1 System Status

The first selection, **System Status** gives you information on the status and statistics of the ports, as shown next. **System Status** is a tool that can be used to monitor your ZyXEL Device. Specifically, it gives you information on your Ethernet and Wireless LAN status, and the number of packets sent and received.

To get to System Status, type 24 to go to **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**. From this menu, type 1. **System Status**. There are two commands in **Menu 24.1 – System Maintenance – Status**. Entering 9 resets the counters; pressing [ESC] takes you back to the previous screen.

The following table describes the fields present in **Menu 24.1 – System Maintenance – Status** which are read-only and meant for diagnostic purposes.

Figure 137 Menu 24.1 System Maintenance: Status

```

Menu 24.1 - System Maintenance - Status                                01:55:5
                                                                    Sat. Jan. 01, 200

Port   Status      TxPkts    RxPkts    Cols    Tx B/s    Rx B/s    Up Tim
Ethernet 100M/Full  5802      2001      0        303       128       1:54:
WLAN      54M           3811      74        0         64        0         1:55:

Port   Ethernet Address      IP Address      IP Mask      DHCP
Ethernet 00:13:49:2A:2A:F5    192.168.1.2    255.255.255.0  None
WLAN      00:13:49:2A:2A:F5

System up Time:      1:55:57
ZyNOS F/W Version:  V3.60(AAI.1) | 09/05/2006
Name: NWA-3100

Press Command:

COMMANDS: 9-Reset Counters   ESC-Exit

```

The following table describes the fields present in this menu.

Table 73 Menu 24.1 System Maintenance: Status

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Port	This is the port type. Port types are: Ethernet and WLAN.
Status	This shows the status of the remote node.
TxPkts	This is the number of transmitted packets to this remote node.
RxPkts	This is the number of received packets from this remote node.
Cols	This is the number of collisions on this connection.
Tx B/s	This shows the transmission rate in bytes per second.
Rx B/s	This shows the receiving rate in bytes per second.
Up Time	This is the time this channel has been connected to the current remote node.
Ethernet Address	This shows the MAC address of the port.
IP Address	This shows the IP address of the network device connected to the port.
IP Mask	This shows the subnet mask of the network device connected to the port.
DHCP	This shows the DHCP setting (None or Client) for the port.
System Up Time	This is the time the ZyXEL Device is up and running from the last reboot.
ZyNOS F/W Version	Refers to the ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) system firmware version. ZyNOS is a registered trademark of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.
Name	This displays the device name.

21.2 System Information

To get to the System Information:

- 1 Enter 24 to display **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**.
- 2 Enter 2 to display **Menu 24.2 – System Information and Console Port Speed**.
- 3 From this menu you have two choices as shown in the next figure:

Figure 138 Menu 24.2 System Information and Console Port Speed

```

Menu 24.2 - System Information and Console Port Speed
  1. System Information
  2. Console Port Speed

Please enter selection:

```



The ZyXEL Device has an internal console port for support personnel only. Do not open the ZyXEL Device as it will void your warranty.

21.2.1 System Information

Enter 1 in menu 24.2 to display the screen shown next.

Figure 139 Menu 24.2.1 System Information: Information

```

Menu 24.2.1 - System Maintenance - Information

Name: NWA-3100
Routing: BRIDGE
ZyNOS F/W Version: V3.60(AAI.0)b1 | 05/25/2005
Country Code: 255

LAN
Ethernet Address: 00:A0:C5:F5:02:02
IP Address: 192.168.1.2
IP Mask: 255.255.255.0
DHCP: None

Press ESC or RETURN to Exit:

```

The following table describes the fields in this menu.

Table 74 Menu 24.2.1 System Maintenance: Information

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Name	Displays the system name of your ZyXEL Device. This information can be changed in Menu 1 – General Setup .
Routing	Refers to the routing protocol used.
ZyNOS F/W Version	Refers to the ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) system firmware version. ZyNOS is a registered trademark of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

Table 74 Menu 24.2.1 System Maintenance: Information

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Country Code	Refers to the country code of the firmware.
LAN	
Ethernet Address	Refers to the Ethernet MAC (Media Access Control) of your ZyXEL Device.
IP Address	This is the IP address of the ZyXEL Device in dotted decimal notation.
IP Mask	This shows the subnet mask of the ZyXEL Device.
DHCP	This field shows the DHCP setting of the ZyXEL Device.
When you have completed this menu, press [ENTER] at the prompt "Press ENTER to confirm or ESC to cancel" to save your configuration or press [ESC] to cancel and go back to the previous screen.	

21.2.2 Console Port Speed

You can set up different port speeds for the console port through **Menu 24.2.2 – System Maintenance – Console Port Speed**. Your ZyXEL Device supports 9600 (default), 19200, 38400, 57600 and 115200 bps console port speeds. Press [SPACE BAR] and then [ENTER] to select the desired speed in menu 24.2.2, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 140 Menu 24.2.2 System Maintenance: Change Console Port Speed

```

Menu 24.2.2 - System Maintenance - Change Console Port Speed

      Console Port Speed: 9600

      Press ENTER to Confirm or ESC to Cancel:

```

After you changed your ZyXEL Device's console port speed, you must also make the same change to the console port speed parameter of your communication software.

21.3 Log and Trace

Your ZyXEL Device provides error logs and trace records that are stored locally.

21.3.1 Viewing Error Log

The first place you should look for clues when something goes wrong is the error log. Follow the procedures to view the local error/trace log:

- 1 Type 24 in the main menu to display **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**.
- 2 From menu 24, type 3 to display **Menu 24.3 – System Maintenance – Log and Trace**.

Figure 141 Menu 24.3 System Maintenance: Log and Trace

```

Menu 24.3 - System Maintenance - Log and Trace

1. View Error Log

Please enter selection:

```

- 3 Enter 1 from **Menu 24.3 – System Maintenance – Log and Trace** and press [ENTER] twice to display the error log in the system.

After the ZyXEL Device finishes displaying the error log, you will have the option to clear it. Samples of typical error and information messages are presented in the next figure.

Figure 142 Sample Error and Information Messages

```

56 Sat Jan 1 00:00:00 2000 PP05 ERROR Wireless LAN init fail, code=-1
57 Sat Jan 1 00:00:01 2000 PINI INFO Last errorlog repeat 1 Times
58 Sat Jan 1 00:00:01 2000 PINI INFO main: init completed
59 Sat Jan 1 00:00:02 2000 PP05 -WARN SNMP TRAP 3: link up
60 Sat Jan 1 00:00:30 2000 PSSV -WARN SNMP TRAP 0: cold start
61 Sat Jan 1 00:01:38 2000 PINI INFO SMT Session Begin
62 Sat Jan 1 00:06:44 2000 PINI INFO SMT Session End
63 Sat Jan 1 00:11:13 2000 PINI INFO SMT Session Begin
Clear Error Log (y/n):

```

21.4 Diagnostic

The diagnostic facility allows you to test the different aspects of your ZyXEL Device to determine if it is working properly. Menu 24.4 allows you to choose among various types of diagnostic tests to evaluate your system, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 143 Menu 24.4 System Maintenance: Diagnostic

```

Menu 24.4 - System Maintenance - Diagnostic

TCP/IP
1. Ping Host
2. DHCP Release
3. DHCP Renewal

System
11. Reboot System

Enter Menu Selection Number:
Host IP Address= N/A

```

Follow the procedure next to get to display this menu:

- 1 From the main menu, type 24 to open **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**.

- 2 From this menu, type 4. Diagnostic to open **Menu 24.4 – System Maintenance – Diagnostic**.

The following table describes the diagnostic tests available in menu 24.4 for your ZyXEL Device and the connections.

Table 75 Menu 24.4 System Maintenance Menu: Diagnostic

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Ping Host	Ping the host to see if the links and TCP/IP protocol on both systems are working.
DHCP Release	Release the IP address assigned by the DHCP server.
DHCP Renewal	Get a new IP address from the DHCP server.
Reboot System	Reboot the ZyXEL Device.
Host IP Address	If you typed 1 to Ping Host, now type the address of the computer you want to ping.

Firmware and Configuration File Maintenance

This chapter tells you how to backup and restore your configuration file as well as upload new firmware and configuration files using the SMT screens.

22.1 Filename Conventions

The configuration file (often called the romfile or rom-0) contains the factory default settings in the menus such as password and TCP/IP Setup, etc. It arrives from ZyXEL with a rom filename extension. Once you have customized the ZyXEL Device's settings, they can be saved back to your computer under a filename of your choosing.

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System sometimes referred to as the “ras” file) is the system firmware and has a “bin” filename extension. With many FTP and TFTP clients, the filenames are similar to those seen next.

```
ftp> put firmware.bin ras
```

This is a sample FTP session showing the transfer of the computer file " firmware.bin" to the ZyXEL Device.

```
ftp> get rom-0 config.cfg
```

This is a sample FTP session saving the current configuration to the computer file config.cfg.

If your [T]FTP client does not allow you to have a destination filename different than the source, you will need to rename them as the ZyXEL Device only recognizes “rom-0” and “ras”. Be sure you keep unaltered copies of both files for later use.

The following table is a summary. Please note that the internal filename refers to the filename on the ZyXEL Device and the external filename refers to the filename not on the ZyXEL Device, that is, on your computer, local network or FTP site and so the name (but not the extension) will vary. After uploading new firmware see the **ZyNOS F/W Version** field in **Menu 24.2.1 – System Maintenance – Information** to confirm that you have uploaded the correct firmware version.

Table 76 Filename Conventions

FILE TYPE	INTERNAL NAME	EXTERNAL NAME	DESCRIPTION
Configuration File	Rom-0	*.rom	This is the configuration filename on the ZyXEL Device. Uploading the rom-0 file replaces the entire ROM file system, including your ZyXEL Device configurations, system-related data (including the default password), the error log and the trace log.
Firmware	Ras	*.bin	This is the generic name for the ZyNOS firmware on the ZyXEL Device.

22.2 Backup Configuration

Option 5 from **Menu 24 – System Maintenance** allows you to backup the current configuration to your computer. Backup is highly recommended once your ZyXEL Device is functioning properly. FTP is the preferred method, although TFTP can also be used.

Please note that the terms “download” and “upload” are relative to the computer. Download means to transfer from the ZyXEL Device to the computer, while upload means from your computer to the ZyXEL Device.

22.2.1 Backup Configuration Using FTP

Enter 5 in **Menu 24 – System Maintenance** to get the following screen.

Figure 144 Menu 24.5 Backup Configuration

```
Menu 24.5 - Backup Configuration
```

```
To transfer the configuration file to your workstation, follow the procedure below:
```

1. Launch the FTP client on your workstation.
2. Type "open" and the IP address of your router. Then type "root" and SMT password as requested.
3. Locate the 'rom-0' file.
4. Type 'get rom-0' to back up the current router configuration to your workstation.

```
For details on FTP commands, please consult the documentation of your FTP client program. For details on backup using TFTP (note that you must remain in the menu to back up using TFTP), please see your router manual.
```

```
Press ENTER to Exit:
```

22.2.2 Using the FTP command from the DOS Prompt

- 1 Launch the FTP client on your computer.
- 2 Enter “open” and the IP address of your ZyXEL Device.
- 3 Press [ENTER] when prompted for a username.
- 4 Enter “root” and your SMT password as requested. The default is 1234.
- 5 Enter “bin” to set transfer mode to binary.
- 6 Use “get” to transfer files from the ZyXEL Device to the computer, for example, “get rom-0 config.rom” transfers the configuration file on the ZyXEL Device to your computer and renames it “config.rom”. See earlier in this chapter for more information on filename conventions.
- 7 Enter “quit” to exit the FTP prompt.

Figure 145 FTP Session Example

```

331 Enter PASS command
Password:
230 Logged in
ftp> bin
200 Type I OK
ftp> get rom-0 zyxel.rom
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for STOR ras
226 File received OK
ftp: 327680 bytes sent in 1.10Seconds
297.89Kbytes/sec.
ftp> quit

```

The following table describes some of the commands that you may see in third party FTP clients.

Table 77 General Commands for Third Party FTP Clients

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Host Address	Enter the address of the host server.
Login Type	Anonymous. This is when a user I.D. and password is automatically supplied to the server for anonymous access. Anonymous logins will work only if your ISP or service administrator has enabled this option. Normal. The server requires a unique User ID and Password to login.
Transfer Type	Transfer files in either ASCII (plain text format) or in binary mode.
Initial Remote Directory	Specify the default remote directory (path).
Initial Local Directory	Specify the default local directory (path).

22.2.3 Backup Configuration Using TFTP

The ZyXEL Device supports the up/downloading of the firmware and the configuration file using TFTP (Trivial File Transfer Protocol) over LAN. Although TFTP should work over WAN as well, it is not recommended.

To use TFTP, your computer must have both telnet and TFTP clients. To backup the configuration file, follow the procedure shown next:

- 1 Use telnet from your computer to connect to the ZyXEL Device and log in. Because TFTP does not have any security checks, the ZyXEL Device records the IP address of the telnet client and accepts TFTP requests only from this address.
- 2 Put the SMT in command interpreter (CI) mode by entering 8 in **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**.
- 3 Enter command “sys stdio 0” to disable the SMT timeout, so the TFTP transfer will not be interrupted. Enter command “sys stdio 5” to restore the five-minute SMT timeout (default) when the file transfer is complete.
- 4 Launch the TFTP client on your computer and connect to the ZyXEL Device. Set the transfer mode to binary before starting data transfer.
- 5 Use the TFTP client (see the example below) to transfer files between the ZyXEL Device and the computer. The file name for the configuration file is rom-0 (rom-zero, not capital o).

Note that the telnet connection must be active and the SMT in CI mode before and during the TFTP transfer. For details on TFTP commands (see following example), please consult the documentation of your TFTP client program. For UNIX, use “get” to transfer from the ZyXEL Device to the computer and “binary” to set binary transfer mode.

22.2.4 Example: TFTP Command

The following is an example TFTP command:

```
TFTP [-i] host get rom-0 config.rom
```

where “i” specifies binary image transfer mode (use this mode when transferring binary files), “host” is the ZyXEL Device IP address, “get” transfers the file source on the ZyXEL Device (rom-0 name of the configuration file on the ZyXEL Device) to the file destination on the computer and renames it config.rom.

The following table describes some of the fields that you may see in third party TFTP clients.

Table 78 General Commands for Third Party TFTP Clients

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Host	Enter the IP address of the ZyXEL Device. 192.168.1.2 is the ZyXEL Device's default IP address when shipped.
Send/Fetch	Use “Send” to upload the file to the ZyXEL Device and “Fetch” to back up the file on your computer.
Local File	Enter the path and name of the firmware file (*.bin extension) or configuration file (*.rom extension) on your computer.
Remote File	This is the filename on the ZyXEL Device. The filename for the firmware is “ras” and for the configuration file, is “rom-0”.
Binary	Transfer the file in binary mode.
Abort	Stop transfer of the file.

22.2.5 Backup Via Console Port

Back up configuration via console port by following the HyperTerminal procedure shown next. Procedures using other serial communications programs should be similar.

- 1 Display menu 24.5 and enter “y” at the following screen.

Figure 146 System Maintenance: Backup Configuration

```
Ready to backup Configuration via Xmodem.
Do you want to continue (y/n):
```

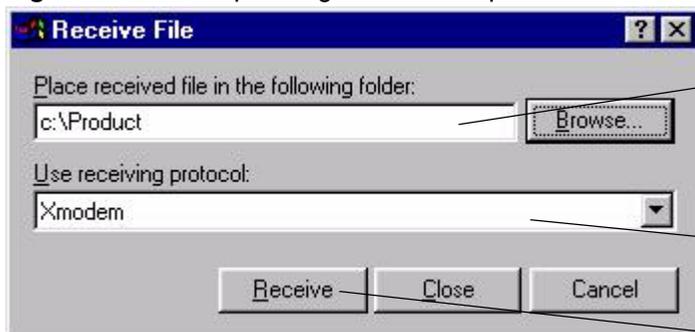
- 2 The following screen indicates that the Xmodem download has started.

Figure 147 System Maintenance: Starting Xmodem Download Screen

```
You can enter ctrl-x to terminate operation any time.
Starting XMODEM download...
```

- 3 Run the HyperTerminal program by clicking **Transfer**, then **Receive File** as shown in the following screen.

Figure 148 Backup Configuration Example



Type a location for storing the configuration file or click **Browse** to look for one.

Choose the **Xmodem** protocol.

Then click **Receive**.

- 4 After a successful backup you will see the following screen. Press any key to return to the SMT menu.

Figure 149 Successful Backup Confirmation Screen

```
** Backup Configuration completed. OK.
### Hit any key to continue.###
```

22.3 Restore Configuration

Menu 24.6 — System Maintenance – Restore Configuration allows you to restore the configuration via FTP or TFTP to your ZyXEL Device. The preferred method is FTP. Note that this function erases the current configuration before restoring the previous backup configuration; please do not attempt to restore unless you have a backup configuration stored on disk. To restore configuration using FTP or TFTP is the same as uploading the configuration file, please refer to the following sections on FTP and TFTP file transfer for more details. The ZyXEL Device restarts automatically after the file transfer is complete.

22.3.1 Restore Using FTP

For details about backup using (T)FTP please refer to earlier sections on FTP and TFTP file upload in this chapter.

Figure 150 Menu 24.6 Restore Configuration

```

Menu 24.6 - Restore Configuration
To transfer the firmware and the configuration file, follow the procedure
below:
1. Launch the FTP client on your workstation.
2. Type "open" and the IP address of your router. Then type "root" and
   SMT password as requested.
3. Type "put backupfilename rom-0" where backupfilename is the name of
   your backup configuration file on your workstation and rom-spt is the
   Remote file name on the router. This restores the configuration to your
   router.
4. The system reboots automatically after a successful file transfer.

For details on FTP commands, please consult the documentation of your FTP
client program. For details on restoring using TFTP (note that you must
remain in the menu to back up using TFTP), please see your router manual.

Press ENTER to Exit:

```

22.4 Uploading Firmware and Configuration Files

Menu 24.7 – System Maintenance – Upload Firmware allows you to upgrade the firmware and the configuration file.



WARNING! PLEASE WAIT A FEW MINUTES FOR RESTART AFTER FIRMWARE OR CONFIGURATION FILE UPLOAD. INTERRUPTING THE UPLOAD PROCESS MAY PERMANENTLY DAMAGE YOUR DEVICE.

Figure 151 Menu 24.7 System Maintenance: Upload Firmware

```

Menu 24.7 - System Maintenance - Upload Firmware

1. Upload System Firmware
2. Upload System Configuration File

Enter Menu Selection Number:

```

The configuration data, system-related data, the error log and the trace log are all stored in the configuration file. Please be aware that uploading the configuration file replaces everything contained within.

22.4.1 Firmware Upload

FTP is the preferred method for uploading the firmware and configuration. To use this feature, your computer must have an FTP client.

When you telnet into the ZyXEL Device, you will see the following screens for uploading firmware and the configuration file using FTP.

Figure 152 Menu 24.7.1 System Maintenance: Upload System Firmware

```

Menu 24.7.1 - System Maintenance - Upload System Firmware

To upload the system firmware, follow the procedure below:
1. Launch the FTP client on your workstation.
2. Type "open" and the IP address of your system. Then type "root" and
   SMT password as requested.
3. Type "put firmwarefilename ras" where "firmwarefilename" is the name of your
   firmware upgrade file on your workstation and "ras" is the remote file name on the
   system.
4. The system reboots automatically after a successful firmware upload.

For details on FTP commands, please consult the documentation of your FTP
client program. For details on uploading system firmware using TFTP (note
that you must remain on this menu to upload system firmware using TFTP), please see
your manual.

Press ENTER to Exit:

```

22.4.2 Configuration File Upload

You see the following screen when you telnet into menu 24.7.2.

Figure 153 Menu 24.7.2 System Maintenance: Upload System Configuration File

```

Menu 24.7.2 - System Maintenance - Upload System Configuration File

To upload the system configuration file, follow the procedure below:
1. Launch the FTP client on your workstation.
2. Type "open" and the IP address of your system. Then type "root" and SMT password
   as requested.
3. Type "put configurationfilename rom-0" where "configurationfilename" is the name of
   your system configuration file on your workstation, which will be transferred to the
   "rom-0" file on the system.
4. The system reboots automatically after the upload system configuration file process
   is complete.

For details on FTP commands, please consult the documentation of your FTP client
program. For details on uploading system firmware using TFTP (note that you must
remain on this menu to upload system firmware using TFTP), please see your manual.

Press ENTER to Exit:

```

To transfer the firmware and the configuration file, follow these examples:

22.4.3 Using the FTP command from the DOS Prompt Example

- 1 Launch the FTP client on your computer.
- 2 Enter "open" and the IP address of your ZyXEL Device.
- 3 Press [ENTER] when prompted for a username.
- 4 Enter "root" and your SMT password as requested. The default is 1234.
- 5 Enter "bin" to set transfer mode to binary.
- 6 Use "put" to transfer files from the computer to the ZyXEL Device for example "put firmware.bin ras" transfers the firmware on your computer (firmware.bin) to the ZyXEL Device and renames it "ras". Similarly "put config.rom rom-0" transfers the configuration file on your computer (config.rom) to the ZyXEL Device and renames it "rom-0". Likewise "get rom-0 config.rom" transfers the configuration file on the ZyXEL Device to your computer and renames it "config.rom." See earlier in this chapter for more information on filename conventions.
- 7 Enter "quit" to exit the FTP prompt.

Figure 154 FTP Session Example

```

331 Enter PASS command
Password:
230 Logged in
ftp> bin
200 Type I OK
ftp> put firmware.bin ras
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for STOR ras
226 File received OK
ftp: 327680 bytes sent in 1.10Seconds
297.89Kbytes/sec.
ftp> quit

```

More commands that you may find in third party FTP clients are listed earlier in this chapter.

22.4.4 TFTP File Upload

The ZyXEL Device also supports the up/downloading of the firmware and the configuration file using TFTP (Trivial File Transfer Protocol) over LAN. Although TFTP should work over WAN as well, it is not recommended.

To use TFTP, your computer must have both telnet and TFTP clients. To transfer the firmware and the configuration file, follow the procedure shown next:

- 1 Use telnet from your computer to connect to the ZyXEL Device and log in. Because TFTP does not have any security checks, the ZyXEL Device records the IP address of the telnet client and accepts TFTP requests only from this address.
- 2 Put the SMT in command interpreter (CI) mode by entering 8 in **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**.
- 3 Enter the command “sys stdio 0” to disable the SMT timeout, so the TFTP transfer will not be interrupted. Enter command “sys stdio 5” to restore the five-minute SMT timeout (default) when the file transfer is complete.
- 4 Launch the TFTP client on your computer and connect to the ZyXEL Device. Set the transfer mode to binary before starting data transfer.
- 5 Use the TFTP client (see the example below) to transfer files between the ZyXEL Device and the computer. The file name for the firmware is “ras” and the configuration file is “rom-0” (rom-zero, not capital o).

Note that the telnet connection must be active and the SMT in CI mode before and during the TFTP transfer. For details on TFTP commands (see following example), please consult the documentation of your TFTP client program. For UNIX, use “get” to transfer from the ZyXEL Device to the computer, “put” the other way around, and “binary” to set binary transfer mode.

22.4.5 Example: TFTP Command

The following is an example TFTP command:

```
TFTP [-i] host put firmware.bin ras
```

where “i” specifies binary image transfer mode (use this mode when transferring binary files), “host” is the ZyXEL Device’s IP address, “put” transfers the file source on the computer (firmware.bin – name of the firmware on the computer) to the file destination on the remote host (ras - name of the firmware on the ZyXEL Device).

Commands that you may see in third party TFTP clients are listed earlier in this chapter.

22.4.6 Uploading Via Console Port

FTP or TFTP are the preferred methods for uploading firmware to your ZyXEL Device. However, in the event of your network being down, uploading files is only possible with a direct connection to your ZyXEL Device via the console port. Uploading files via the console port under normal conditions is not recommended since FTP or TFTP is faster. Any serial communications program should work fine; however, you must use the Xmodem protocol to perform the download/upload.



The ZyXEL Device has an internal console port for support personnel only. Do not open the ZyXEL Device as it will void your warranty.

22.4.7 Uploading Firmware File Via Console Port

Select 1 from **Menu 24.7 – System Maintenance – Upload Firmware** to display **Menu 24.7.1 – System Maintenance – Upload System Firmware**, then follow the instructions as shown in the following screen.

Figure 155 Menu 24.7.1 as seen using the Console Port

```

Menu 24.7.1 - System Maintenance - Upload System Firmware

To upload system firmware:
1. Enter "y" at the prompt below to go into debug mode.
2. Enter "atur" after "Enter Debug Mode" message.
3. Wait for "Starting XMODEM upload" message before activating
   Xmodem upload on your terminal.
4. After successful firmware upload, enter "atgo" to restart the
   router.
Warning: Proceeding with the upload will erase the current system
firmware.

Do You Wish To Proceed: (Y/N)

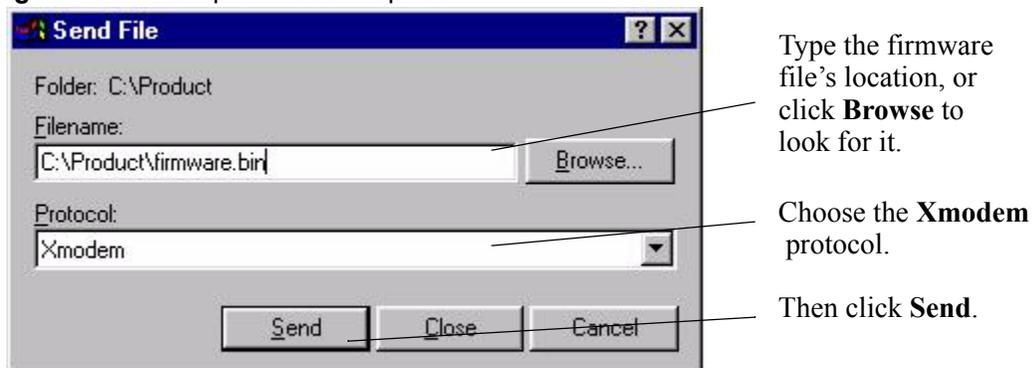
```

After the "Starting Xmodem upload" message appears, activate the Xmodem protocol on your computer. Follow the procedure as shown previously for the HyperTerminal program. The procedure for other serial communications programs should be similar.

22.4.8 Example Xmodem Firmware Upload Using HyperTerminal

Click **Transfer**, then **Send File** to display the following screen.

Figure 156 Example Xmodem Upload



After the firmware upload process has completed, the ZyXEL Device will automatically restart.

22.4.9 Uploading Configuration File Via Console Port

- 1 Select 2 from **Menu 24.7 – System Maintenance – Upload Firmware** to display **Menu 24.7.2 – System Maintenance – Upload System Configuration File**. Follow the instructions shown in the next screen.

Figure 157 Menu 24.7.2 as seen using the Console Port

```

Menu 24.7.2 - System Maintenance - Upload System Configuration File

To upload system configuration file:
1. Enter "y" at the prompt below to go into debug mode.
2. Enter "atlc" after "Enter Debug Mode" message.
3. Wait for "Starting XMODEM upload" message before activating
   Xmodem upload on your terminal.
4. After successful firmware upload, enter "atgo" to restart the
   system.

Warning:
1. Proceeding with the upload will erase the current
   configuration file.
2. The system's console port speed (Menu 24.2.2) may change
   when it is restarted; please adjust your terminal's speed
   accordingly. The password may change (menu 23), also.
3. When uploading the DEFAULT configuration file, the console
   port speed will be reset to 9600 bps and the password to
   "1234".

Do You Wish To Proceed: (Y/N)

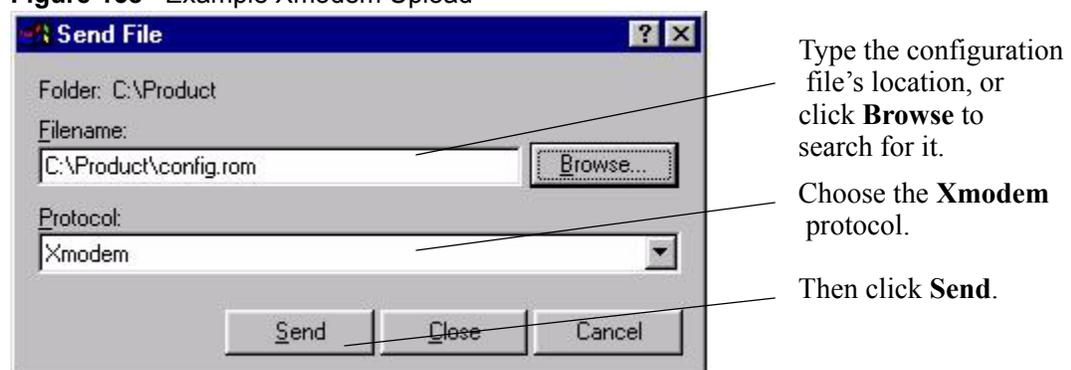
```

- 2 After the "Starting Xmodem upload" message appears, activate the Xmodem protocol on your computer. Follow the procedure as shown previously for the HyperTerminal program. The procedure for other serial communications programs should be similar.
- 3 Enter "atgo" to restart the ZyXEL Device.

22.4.10 Example Xmodem Configuration Upload Using HyperTerminal

Click **Transfer**, then **Send File** to display the following screen.

Figure 158 Example Xmodem Upload



After the configuration upload process has completed, restart the ZyXEL Device by entering “atgo”.

System Maintenance and Information

This chapter leads you through SMT menus 24.8 and 24.10.

23.1 Command Interpreter Mode

The Command Interpreter (CI) is a part of the main system firmware. The CI provides much of the same functionality as the SMT, while adding some low-level setup and diagnostic functions. Enter the CI from the SMT by selecting menu 24.8. See the included disk or the zyxel.com web site for more detailed information on CI commands. Enter 8 from **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**. A list of valid commands can be found by typing `help` or `?` at the command prompt. Type “exit” to return to the SMT main menu when finished.



Use of undocumented commands or misconfiguration can damage the unit and possibly render it unusable.

Figure 159 Menu 24 System Maintenance

```
Menu 24 - System Maintenance

1. System Status
2. System Information and Console Port Speed
3. Log and Trace
4. Diagnostic
5. Backup Configuration
6. Restore Configuration
7. Upload Firmware
8. Command Interpreter Mode

10. Time and Date Setting
11. Remote Management Setup

Enter Menu Selection Number:
```

Figure 160 Valid CLI Commands

```

Copyright (c) 1994 - 2005 ZyXEL Communications Corp.
NWA-3100> ?
Valid commands are:
sys          exit          device        ether
config       wlan          ip            ppp
bridge       hdap          bm            certificates
radius       8021x        wcfg         rogueAP
NWA-3100>

```

23.1.1 Command Syntax

- The command keywords are in `courier new` font.
- Enter the command keywords exactly as shown, do not abbreviate.
- The required fields in a command are enclosed in angle brackets `<>`.
- The optional fields in a command are enclosed in square brackets `[]`.
- The `|` symbol means “or”.

For example,

```
sys filter netbios config <type> <on|off>
```

means that you must specify the type of netbios filter and whether to turn it on or off.

23.1.2 Command Usage

A list of valid commands can be found by typing `help` or `?` at the command prompt. Always type the full command. Type `exit` to return to the SMT main menu when finished.

23.1.3 Brute-Force Password Guessing Protection

The following describes the commands for enabling, disabling and configuring the brute-force password guessing protection mechanism for the password.

Table 79 Brute-Force Password Guessing Protection Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
<code>sys pwdertrm</code>	This command displays the brute-force guessing password protection settings.
<code>sys pwdertrm 0</code>	This command turns off the password's protection from brute-force guessing. The brute-force password guessing protection is turned off by default.
<code>sys pwdertrm N</code>	This command sets the password protection to block all access attempts for N (a number from 1 to 60) minutes after the third time an incorrect password is entered.

23.1.3.1 Configuring Brute-Force Password Guessing Protection: Example

```
sys pwdertrm 5
```

This command sets the password protection to block all access attempts for five minutes after the third time an incorrect password is entered.

23.2 Time and Date Setting

The ZyXEL Device keeps track of the time and date. There is also a software mechanism to set the time manually or get the current time and date from an external server when you turn on your ZyXEL Device. Menu 24.10 allows you to update the time and date settings of your ZyXEL Device. The updated time is then displayed in the ZyXEL Device error logs.

- 1 Select menu 24 in the main menu to open **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**.
- 2 Then enter 10 to go to **Menu 24.10 – System Maintenance – Time and Date Setting** to update the time and date settings of your ZyXEL Device as shown in the following screen.

Figure 161 Menu 24.10 System Maintenance: Time and Date Setting

```

Menu 24.10 - System Maintenance - Time and Date Setting

Time Protocol= NTP (RFC-1305)
Time Server Address= 128.105.39.21

Current Time:                05 : 47 : 19
New Time (hh:mm:ss):        05 : 47 : 17

Current Date:                2000 - 01 - 01
New Date (yyyy-mm-dd):      2000 - 01 - 01

Time Zone= GMT

Daylight Saving= No
Start Date (mm-dd):         01 - 01
End Date (mm-dd):          01 - 01

Press ENTER to Confirm or ESC to Cancel:

Press Space Bar to Toggle.

```

The following table describes the fields in this menu.

Table 80 System Maintenance: Time and Date Setting

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Time Protocol	Enter the time service protocol that your time server sends when you turn on the ZyXEL Device. Not all time servers support all protocols, so you may have to check with your ISP/network administrator or use trial and error to find a protocol that works. The main differences between them are the format. Daytime (RFC 867) format is day/month/year/time zone of the server. Time (RFC-868) format displays a 4-byte integer giving the total number of seconds since 1970/1/1 at 0:0:0. NTP (RFC-1305) is similar to Time (RFC-868) . None. The default, enter the time manually.
Time Server Address	Enter the IP address or domain name of your time server. Check with your ISP/network administrator if you are unsure of this information.
Current Time	This field displays an updated time only when you reenter this menu.
New Time	Enter the new time in hour, minute and second format.
Current Date	This field displays an updated date only when you re-enter this menu.

Table 80 System Maintenance: Time and Date Setting

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
New Date	Enter the new date in year, month and day format.
Time Zone	Press [SPACE BAR] and then [ENTER] to set the time difference between your time zone and Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).
Daylight Saving	If you use daylight savings time, then choose Yes .
Start Date	If using daylight savings time, enter the month and day that it starts on.
End Date	If using daylight savings time, enter the month and day that it ends on
Once you have filled in this menu, press [ENTER] at the message "Press ENTER to Confirm or ESC to Cancel" to save your configuration, or press [ESC] to cancel.	

23.2.1 Resetting the Time

The ZyXEL Device resets the time in three instances:

- 1 On leaving menu 24.10 after making changes.
- 2 When the ZyXEL Device starts up, if there is a timeserver configured in menu 24.10.
- 3 24-hour intervals after starting.

23.3 Remote Management Setup

23.3.1 Telnet

You can configure your ZyXEL Device for remote Telnet access to the SMT or command line interface.

23.3.2 FTP

You can upload and download ZyXEL Device firmware and configuration files using FTP. To use this feature, your computer must have an FTP client.

23.3.3 Web

You can use the ZyXEL Device's embedded web configurator for configuration and file management. See the online help for details.

23.3.4 Remote Management Setup

Remote management setup is for managing Telnet, FTP and Web services. You can customize the service port, access interface and the secured client IP address to enhance security and flexibility.

You can manage your ZyXEL Device from a remote location via:

Internet (**WLAN only**), the **LAN only**, **All** (LAN and WLAN) or **Disable** (neither).



If you enable remote management of a service, but have applied a filter to block the service, then you will not be able to remotely manage the service.

Enter 11, from menu 24, to display **Menu 24.11 - Remote Management Control** (shown next)

Figure 162 Menu 24.11 Remote Management Control

```

Menu 24.11 - Remote Management Control

TELNET Server:      Port = 23          Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0
FTP Server:         Port = 21          Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0
HTTPS Server:      Certificate = auto_generated_self_signed_cert
                    Authenticate Client Certificates = No
                    Port = 443          Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0
HTTP Server:       Port = 80          Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0
SNMP Service:      Port = 161         Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0

Press ENTER to Confirm or ESC to Cancel:

```

The following table describes the fields in this menu.

Table 81 Menu 24.11 Remote Management Control

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
TELNET Server: FTP Server: HTTPS Server: HTTP Server: SNMP Service:	Each of these read-only labels denotes a server or service that you may use to remotely manage the ZyXEL Device.
Port	This field shows the port number for the remote management service. You can change the port number for a service if needed, but you must use the same port number to use that service for remote management.
Access	Select the access interface (if any) by pressing the [SPACE BAR]. Choices are: LAN only , WAN only , All or Disable . The default is LAN only .
Secured Client IP	The default 0.0.0.0 allows any client to use this service to remotely manage the ZyXEL Device. Enter an IP address to restrict access to a client with a matching IP address.
Certificate	This field displays the name used to identify this certificate. The ZyXEL Device has an automatically generated self signed certificate by default. The factory default certificate is common to all ZyXEL Device's that use certificates. You can replace the certificate when you log into the ZyXEL Device (see Chapter 4 on page 49) or you can use the Certificates configuration screen (see Chapter 12 on page 133).

Table 81 Menu 24.11 Remote Management Control

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Authenticate Client Certificates	Select Yes by pressing [SPACE BAR]. The internal RADIUS server uses one of the certificates listed in the My Certificates screen to authenticate each wireless client. The exact certificate used depends on the certificate information configured on the wireless client.
Once you have filled in this menu, press [ENTER] to save your configuration, or press [ESC] to cancel.	

23.3.5 Remote Management Limitations

Remote management over LAN or WAN will not work when:

- 1 You have disabled that service in menu 24.11.
- 2 The IP address in the **Secured Client IP** field (menu 24.11) does not match the client IP address. If it does not match, the ZyXEL Device will disconnect the session immediately.
- 3 There is already another remote management session with an equal or higher priority running. You may only have one remote management session running at one time.

23.4 System Timeout

There is a system timeout of five minutes (300 seconds) for Telnet/web/FTP connections. Your ZyXEL Device will automatically log you out if you do nothing in this timeout period, except when it is continuously updating the status in menu 24.1 or when `sys stdio` has been changed on the command line.

Troubleshooting

This chapter offers some suggestions to solve problems you might encounter. The potential problems are divided into the following categories.

- [Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs](#)
- [ZyXEL Device Access and Login](#)
- [Internet Access](#)

24.1 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs



The ZyXEL Device does not turn on. None of the LEDs turn on.

- 1 Make sure you are using the power adaptor or cord included with the ZyXEL Device.
- 2 Make sure the power adaptor or cord is connected to the ZyXEL Device and plugged in to an appropriate power source. Make sure the power source is turned on.
- 3 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the ZyXEL Device.
- 4 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.



One of the LEDs does not behave as expected.

- 1 Make sure you understand the normal behavior of the LED. See [Section 1.5 on page 37](#).
- 2 Check the hardware connections. See the Quick Start Guide.
- 3 Inspect your cables for damage. Contact the vendor to replace any damaged cables.
- 4 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor to the ZyXEL Device.
- 5 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

24.2 ZyXEL Device Access and Login



I forgot the IP address for the ZyXEL Device.

- 1 The default IP address is **192.168.1.2**.
- 2 If you changed the IP address and have forgotten it, you might get the IP address of the ZyXEL Device by looking up the IP address of the default gateway for your computer. To do this in most Windows computers, click **Start > Run**, enter “**cmd**”, and then enter “**ipconfig**”. The IP address of the **Default Gateway** might be the IP address of the ZyXEL Device (it depends on the network), so enter this IP address in your Internet browser.
- 3 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 2.2 on page 40](#).



I forgot the password.

- 1 The default password is **1234**.
- 2 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 2.2 on page 40](#).



I cannot see or access the Login screen in the web configurator.

- 1 Make sure you are using the correct IP address.
 - The default IP address is 192.168.1.2.
 - If you changed the IP address ([Section 9.3 on page 114](#)), use the new IP address.
 - If you changed the IP address and have forgotten it, see the troubleshooting suggestions for [I forgot the IP address for the ZyXEL Device](#).
- 2 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the Quick Start Guide and [Section 1.5 on page 37](#).
- 3 Make sure your Internet browser does not block pop-up windows and has JavaScripts and Java enabled. See [Section 24.1 on page 223](#).
- 4 Make sure your computer is in the same subnet as the ZyXEL Device. (If you know that there are routers between your computer and the ZyXEL Device, skip this step.)
 - If there is no DHCP server on your network, make sure your computer’s IP address is in the same subnet as the ZyXEL Device.
- 5 Reset the device to its factory defaults, and try to access the ZyXEL Device with the default IP address. See your Quick Start Guide.
- 6 If the problem continues, contact the network administrator or vendor, or try one of the advanced suggestions.

Advanced Suggestions

- Try to access the ZyXEL Device using another service, such as Telnet. If you can access the ZyXEL Device, check the remote management settings to find out why the ZyXEL Device does not respond to HTTP.
- If your computer is connected to the **WAN** port or is connected wirelessly, use a computer that is connected to a **LAN/ETHERNET** port.



I can see the Login screen, but I cannot log in to the ZyXEL Device.

- 1 Make sure you have entered the user name and password correctly. The default password is **1234**. These fields are case-sensitive, so make sure [Caps Lock] is not on.
- 2 You cannot log in to the web configurator while someone is using the SMT or Telnet to access the ZyXEL Device. Log out of the ZyXEL Device in the other session, or ask the person who is logged in to log out.
- 3 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the ZyXEL Device.
- 4 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 2.2 on page 40](#).



I cannot access the SMT.

See the troubleshooting suggestions for [I cannot see or access the Login screen in the web configurator](#). Ignore the suggestions about your browser.



I cannot use FTP to upload / download the configuration file. / I cannot use FTP to upload new firmware.

See the troubleshooting suggestions for [I cannot see or access the Login screen in the web configurator](#). Ignore the suggestions about your browser.

24.3 Internet Access



I cannot access the Internet.

- 1 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the Quick Start Guide and [Section 24.1 on page 223](#).
- 2 Make sure you entered your ISP account information correctly. These fields are case-sensitive, so make sure [Caps Lock] is not on.
- 3 If you are trying to access the Internet wirelessly, make sure the wireless settings on the wireless client are the same as the settings on the AP.
- 4 Disconnect all the cables from your device, and follow the directions in the Quick Start Guide again.
- 5 If the problem continues, contact your ISP.



I cannot access the Internet anymore. I had access to the Internet (with the ZyXEL Device), but my Internet connection is not available anymore.

- 1 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the Quick Start Guide and [Section 1.5 on page 37](#).
- 2 Reboot the ZyXEL Device.
- 3 If the problem continues, contact your ISP.



The Internet connection is slow or intermittent.

- 1 There might be a lot of traffic on the network. Look at the LEDs, and check [Section 1.5 on page 37](#). If the ZyXEL Device is sending or receiving a lot of information, try closing some programs that use the Internet, especially peer-to-peer applications.
- 2 Check the signal strength. If the signal is weak, try moving the ZyXEL Device closer to the AP (if possible), and look around to see if there are any devices that might be interfering with the wireless network (microwaves, other wireless networks, and so on).
- 3 Reboot the ZyXEL Device.
- 4 If the problem continues, contact the network administrator or vendor, or try one of the advanced suggestions.

Advanced Suggestions

- Check the settings for QoS. If it is disabled, you might consider activating it. If it is enabled, you might consider raising or lowering the priority for some applications.

PART IV

Appendices and Index

Product Specifications (229)
Setting up Your Computer's IP Address (233)
IP Address Assignment Conflicts (245)
Wireless LANs (249)
Indoor Installation Recommendations (259)
Pop-up Windows, JavaScripts and Java Permissions (261)
IP Addresses and Subnetting (267)
Text File Based Auto Configuration (275)
Legal Information (283)
Customer Support (287)
Index (291)

Product Specifications

The following tables summarize the ZyXEL Device's hardware and firmware features.

Table 82 Hardware Specifications

Power Specification	12 V DC, 1 A
Reset button	Returns all settings to their factory defaults.
Ethernet Port	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto-negotiating: 10 Mbps or 100 Mbps in either half-duplex or full-duplex mode. • Auto-crossover: Use either crossover or straight-through Ethernet cables.
Power over Ethernet (PoE)	IEEE 802.3af compliant.
Operation Temperature	0 ~ 50 ° C
Storage Temperature	-30 ~ 60 ° C
Operation Humidity	10 ~ 90 % (non-condensing)
Storage Humidity	5 ~ 95 % (non-condensing)
Dimensions (W x D x H)	153 mm x 92 mm x 42 mm
Distance between the centers of wall-mounting holes on the device's back.	60 mm
Screw size for wall-mounting	6mm ~ 8mm (0.24" ~ 0.31") head width.

Table 83 Firmware Specifications

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
Wireless LAN Standards	IEEE 802.11a, IEEE 802.11b, IEEE 802.11g
Wireless security	WEP, WPA(2), WPA(2)-PSK, 802.1x
Layer 2 isolation	Prevents wireless clients associated with your ZyXEL Device from communicating with other wireless clients, APs, computers or routers in a network.
Multiple BSSID (MBSSID)	MBSSID mode allows the ZyXEL Device to operate up to 8 different wireless networks (BSSs) simultaneously, each with independently-configurable wireless and security settings.
Rogue AP detection	Rogue AP detection detects and logs unknown access points (APs) operating in the area.
VLAN	802.1Q VLAN tagging.

Table 83 Firmware Specifications

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) / RSTP (Rapid STP)	(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a bridge to interact with other (R)STP-compliant bridges in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network.
WMM QoS	WMM (Wi-Fi MultiMedia) QoS (Quality of Service) allows you to prioritize wireless traffic.
Certificates	The ZyXEL Device can use certificates (also called digital IDs) to authenticate users. Certificates are based on public-private key pairs. Certificates provide a way to exchange public keys for use in authentication.
SSL Passthrough	SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) uses a public key to encrypt data that's transmitted over an SSL connection. Both Netscape Navigator and Internet Explorer support SSL, and many Web sites use the protocol to obtain confidential user information, such as credit card numbers. By convention, URLs that require an SSL connection start with "https" instead of "http". The ZyXEL Device allows SSL connections to take place through the ZyXEL Device.
MAC Address Filter	Your ZyXEL Device checks the MAC address of the wireless station against a list of allowed or denied MAC addresses.
Wireless Association List	With the wireless association list, you can see the list of the wireless stations that are currently using the ZyXEL Device to access your wired network.
Logging and Tracing	Built-in message logging and packet tracing.
Embedded FTP and TFTP Servers	The embedded FTP and TFTP servers enable fast firmware upgrades as well as configuration file backups and restoration.
Auto Configuration	Administrators can use text configuration files to configure the wireless LAN settings for multiple APs. The AP can automatically get a configuration file from a TFTP server at start up or after renewing DHCP client information.
SNMP	SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is a protocol used for exchanging management information between network devices. SNMP is a member of the TCP/IP protocol suite. Your ZyXEL Device supports SNMP agent functionality, which allows a manager station to manage and monitor the ZyXEL Device through the network. The ZyXEL Device supports SNMP version one (SNMPv1) and version two c (SNMPv2c).

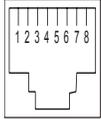
Power over Ethernet (PoE) Specifications

You can use a power over Ethernet injector to power this device. The injector must comply to IEEE 802.3af.

Table 84 Power over Ethernet Injector Specifications

Power Output	15.4 Watts maximum
Power Current	400 mA maximum

Table 85 Power over Ethernet Injector RJ-45 Port Pin Assignments

	PIN NO	RJ-45 SIGNAL ASSIGNMENT
	1	Output Transmit Data +
	2	Output Transmit Data -
	3	Receive Data +
	4	Power +
	5	Power +
	6	Receive Data -
	7	Power -
	8	Power -

Power Adaptor Specifications

Table 86 North American Plug Standards

AC Power Adaptor Model	MU18-2120150-A1
Input Power	100~240 Volts AC, 50~60 Hz, 0.6 A
Output Power	12 Volts DC, 1.5A
Power Consumption	18 W Max
Safety Standards	UL, CUL (UL 60950-1 First Edition)

Table 87 European Plug Standards

AC Power Adaptor Model	MU18-2120150-C5
Input Power	100~240 Volts AC, 50~60 Hz, 0.6 A
Output Power	12 Volts DC, 1.5 A
Power Consumption	18 W Max
Safety Standards	ITS-GS, CE (EN 60950-1)

Table 88 United Kingdom Plug Standards

AC Power Adaptor Model	MU18-2120150-B2
Input Power	100~240 Volts AC, 50~60 Hz, 0.6 A
Output Power	12 Volts DC, 1.5 A
Power Consumption	18 W Max
Safety Standards	ITS-GS (BS EN 60950-1)

Table 89 Australia and New Zealand Plug Standards

AC Power Adaptor Model	MU18-2120150-A3
Input Power	100~240 Volts AC, 50~60 Hz, 0.6 A
Output Power	12 Volts DC, 1.5 A
Power Consumption	18 W Max
Safety Standards	EN 60950:2000

Setting up Your Computer's IP Address

All computers must have a 10M or 100M Ethernet adapter card and TCP/IP installed.

Windows 95/98/Me/NT/2000/XP, Macintosh OS 7 and later operating systems and all versions of UNIX/LINUX include the software components you need to install and use TCP/IP on your computer. Windows 3.1 requires the purchase of a third-party TCP/IP application package.

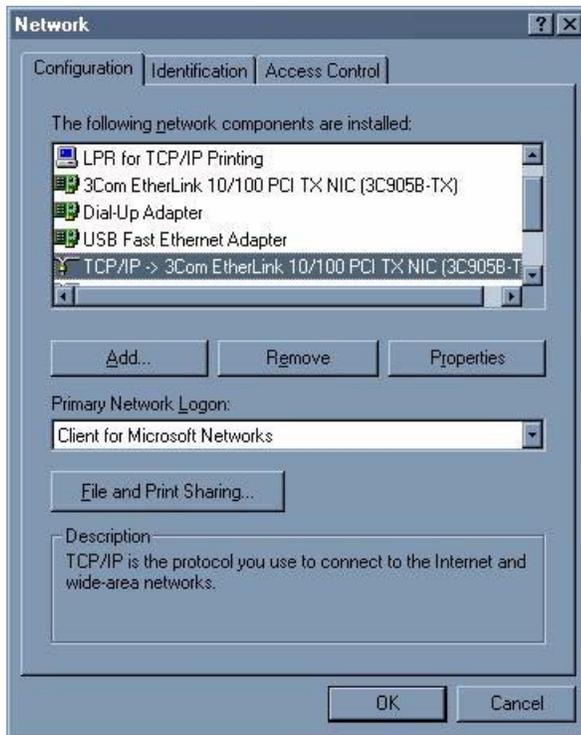
TCP/IP should already be installed on computers using Windows NT/2000/XP, Macintosh OS 7 and later operating systems.

After the appropriate TCP/IP components are installed, configure the TCP/IP settings in order to "communicate" with your network.

If you manually assign IP information instead of using dynamic assignment, make sure that your computers have IP addresses that place them in the same subnet as the ZyXEL Device's LAN port.

Windows 95/98/Me

Click **Start**, **Settings**, **Control Panel** and double-click the **Network** icon to open the **Network** window

Figure 163 Windows 95/98/Me: Network: Configuration

Installing Components

The **Network** window **Configuration** tab displays a list of installed components. You need a network adapter, the TCP/IP protocol and Client for Microsoft Networks.

If you need the adapter:

- 1 In the **Network** window, click **Add**.
- 2 Select **Adapter** and then click **Add**.
- 3 Select the manufacturer and model of your network adapter and then click **OK**.

If you need TCP/IP:

- 1 In the **Network** window, click **Add**.
- 2 Select **Protocol** and then click **Add**.
- 3 Select **Microsoft** from the list of **manufacturers**.
- 4 Select **TCP/IP** from the list of network protocols and then click **OK**.

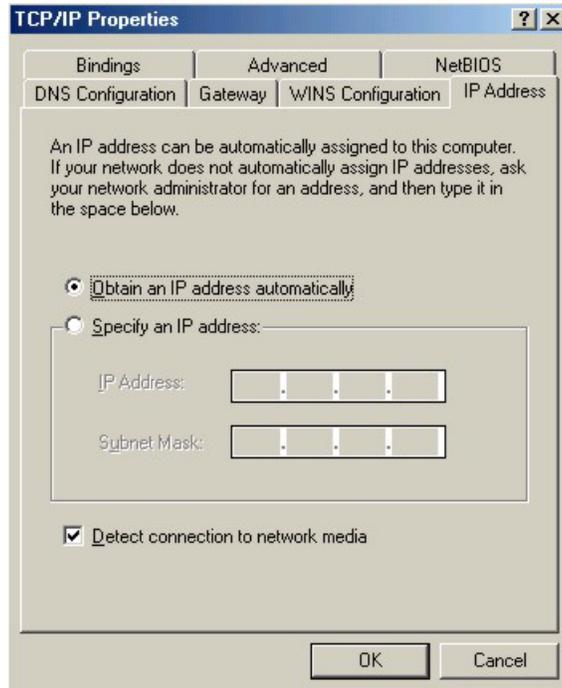
If you need Client for Microsoft Networks:

- 1 Click **Add**.
- 2 Select **Client** and then click **Add**.
- 3 Select **Microsoft** from the list of manufacturers.
- 4 Select **Client for Microsoft Networks** from the list of network clients and then click **OK**.
- 5 Restart your computer so the changes you made take effect.

Configuring

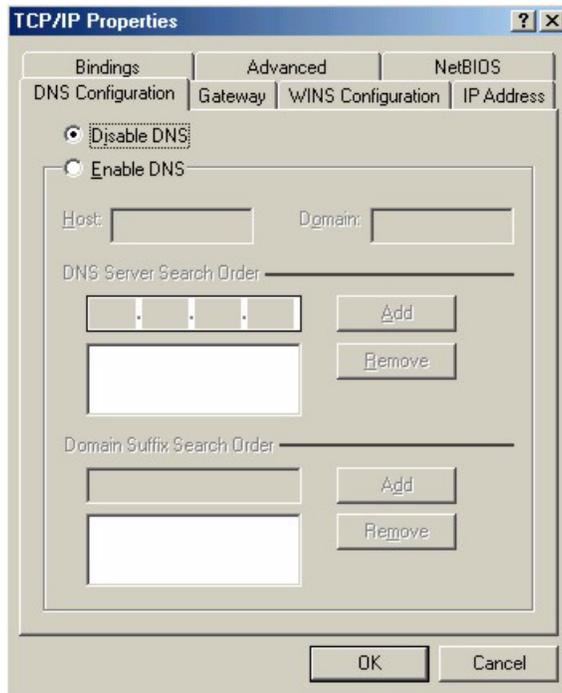
- 1 In the **Network** window **Configuration** tab, select your network adapter's TCP/IP entry and click **Properties**
- 2 Click the **IP Address** tab.
 - If your IP address is dynamic, select **Obtain an IP address automatically**.
 - If you have a static IP address, select **Specify an IP address** and type your information into the **IP Address** and **Subnet Mask** fields.

Figure 164 Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: IP Address



- 3 Click the **DNS Configuration** tab.
 - If you do not know your DNS information, select **Disable DNS**.
 - If you know your DNS information, select **Enable DNS** and type the information in the fields below (you may not need to fill them all in).

Figure 165 Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: DNS Configuration



- 4 Click the **Gateway** tab.
 - If you do not know your gateway's IP address, remove previously installed gateways.
 - If you have a gateway IP address, type it in the **New gateway field** and click **Add**.
- 5 Click **OK** to save and close the **TCP/IP Properties** window.
- 6 Click **OK** to close the **Network** window. Insert the Windows CD if prompted.
- 7 Turn on your ZyXEL Device and restart your computer when prompted.

Verifying Settings

- 1 Click **Start** and then **Run**.
- 2 In the **Run** window, type "winipcfg" and then click **OK** to open the **IP Configuration** window.
- 3 Select your network adapter. You should see your computer's IP address, subnet mask and default gateway.

Windows 2000/NT/XP

- 1 For Windows XP, click **start**, **Control Panel**. In Windows 2000/NT, click **Start**, **Settings**, **Control Panel**.

Figure 166 Windows XP: Start Menu

- 2 For Windows XP, click **Network Connections**. For Windows 2000/NT, click **Network and Dial-up Connections**.

Figure 167 Windows XP: Control Panel

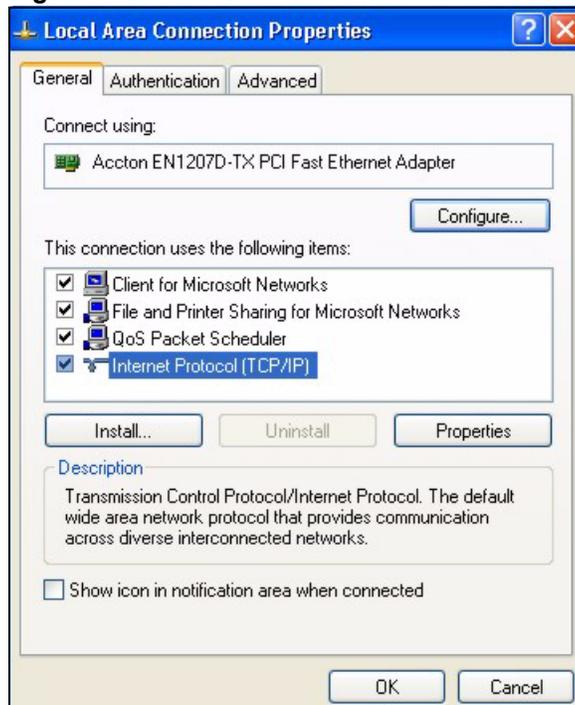
- 3 Right-click **Local Area Connection** and then click **Properties**.

Figure 168 Windows XP: Control Panel: Network Connections: Properties

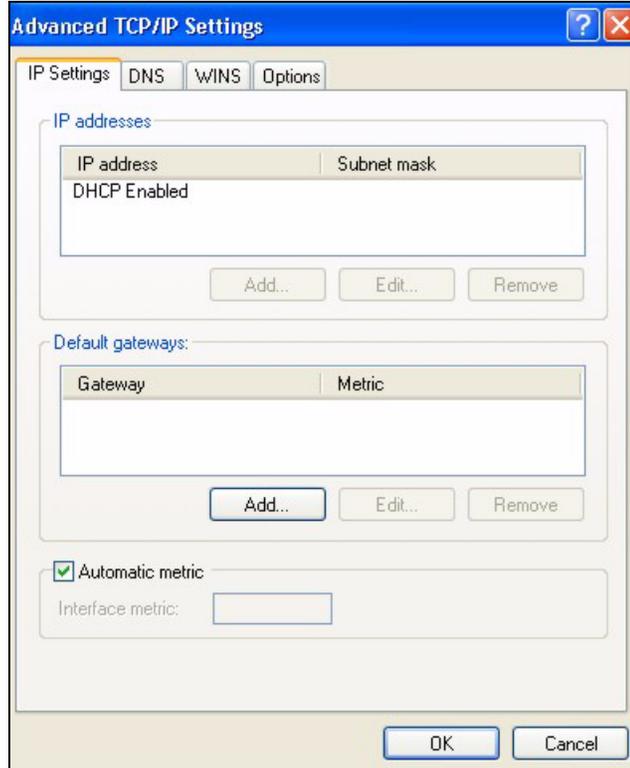


- 4** Select **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** (under the **General** tab in Win XP) and click **Properties**.

Figure 169 Windows XP: Local Area Connection Properties



- 5** The **Internet Protocol TCP/IP Properties** window opens (the **General** tab in Windows XP).
 - If you have a dynamic IP address click **Obtain an IP address automatically**.
 - If you have a static IP address click **Use the following IP Address** and fill in the **IP address**, **Subnet mask**, and **Default gateway** fields. Click **Advanced**.

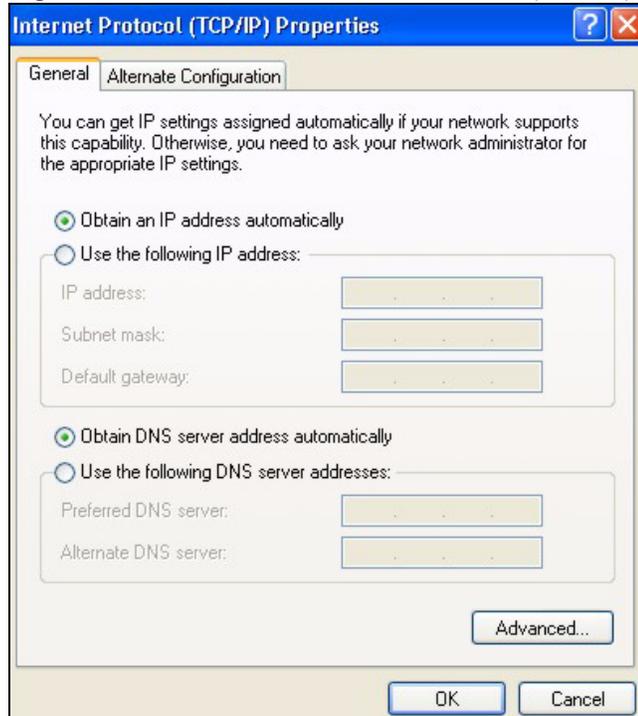
Figure 170 Windows XP: Advanced TCP/IP Settings

- 6** If you do not know your gateway's IP address, remove any previously installed gateways in the **IP Settings** tab and click **OK**.

Do one or more of the following if you want to configure additional IP addresses:

- In the **IP Settings** tab, in **IP addresses**, click **Add**.
 - In **TCP/IP Address**, type an IP address in **IP address** and a subnet mask in **Subnet mask**, and then click **Add**.
 - Repeat the above two steps for each IP address you want to add.
 - Configure additional default gateways in the **IP Settings** tab by clicking **Add** in **Default gateways**.
 - In **TCP/IP Gateway Address**, type the IP address of the default gateway in **Gateway**. To manually configure a default metric (the number of transmission hops), clear the **Automatic metric** check box and type a metric in **Metric**.
 - Click **Add**.
 - Repeat the previous three steps for each default gateway you want to add.
 - Click **OK** when finished.
- 7** In the **Internet Protocol TCP/IP Properties** window (the **General** tab in Windows XP):
- Click **Obtain DNS server address automatically** if you do not know your DNS server IP address(es).
 - If you know your DNS server IP address(es), click **Use the following DNS server addresses**, and type them in the **Preferred DNS server** and **Alternate DNS server** fields.
- If you have previously configured DNS servers, click **Advanced** and then the **DNS** tab to order them.

Figure 171 Windows XP: Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties



- 8** Click **OK** to close the **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties** window.
- 9** Click **OK** to close the **Local Area Connection Properties** window.
- 10** Turn on your ZyXEL Device and restart your computer (if prompted).

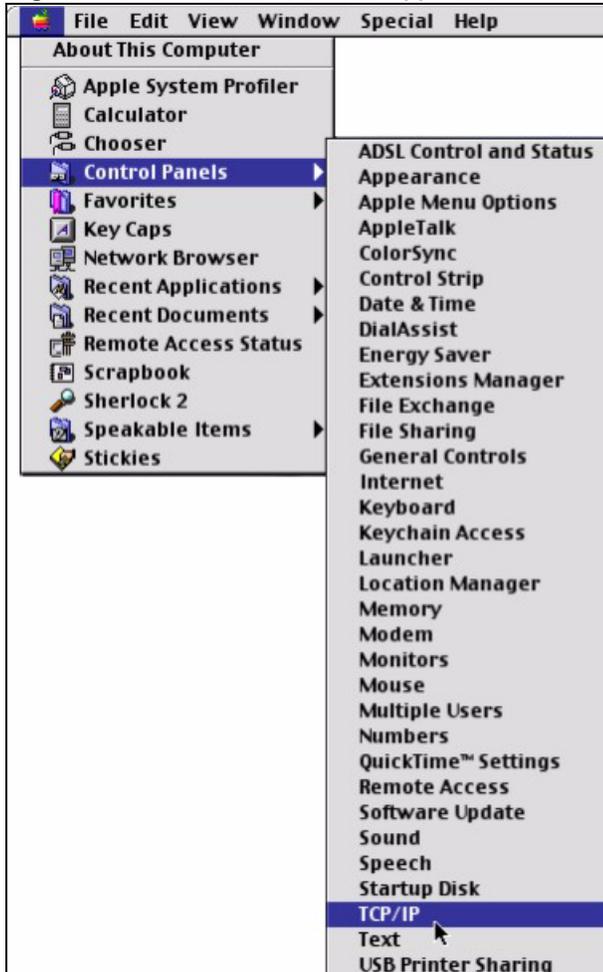
Verifying Settings

- 1** Click **Start, All Programs, Accessories** and then **Command Prompt**.
- 2** In the **Command Prompt** window, type "ipconfig" and then press [ENTER]. You can also open **Network Connections**, right-click a network connection, click **Status** and then click the **Support** tab.

Macintosh OS 8/9

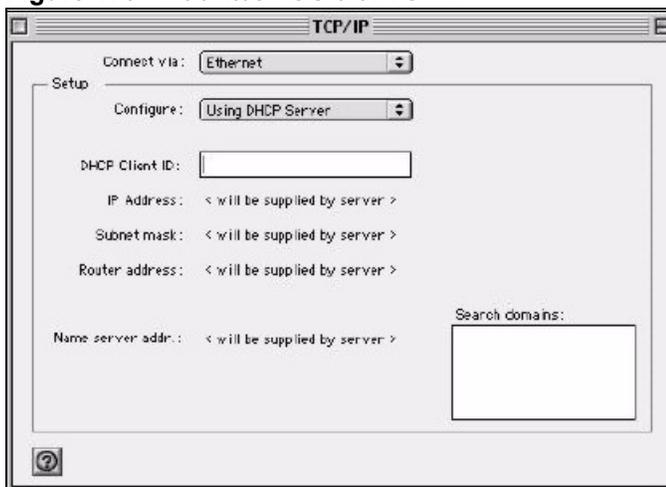
- 1** Click the **Apple** menu, **Control Panel** and double-click **TCP/IP** to open the **TCP/IP Control Panel**.

Figure 172 Macintosh OS 8/9: Apple Menu



- 2 Select **Ethernet built-in** from the **Connect via** list.

Figure 173 Macintosh OS 8/9: TCP/IP



- 3 For dynamically assigned settings, select **Using DHCP Server** from the **Configure:** list.
- 4 For statically assigned settings, do the following:
 - From the **Configure** box, select **Manually**.

- Type your IP address in the **IP Address** box.
 - Type your subnet mask in the **Subnet mask** box.
 - Type the IP address of your ZyXEL Device in the **Router address** box.
- 5** Close the **TCP/IP Control Panel**.
 - 6** Click **Save** if prompted, to save changes to your configuration.
 - 7** Turn on your ZyXEL Device and restart your computer (if prompted).

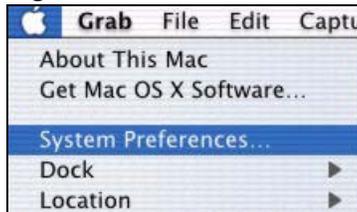
Verifying Settings

Check your TCP/IP properties in the **TCP/IP Control Panel** window.

Macintosh OS X

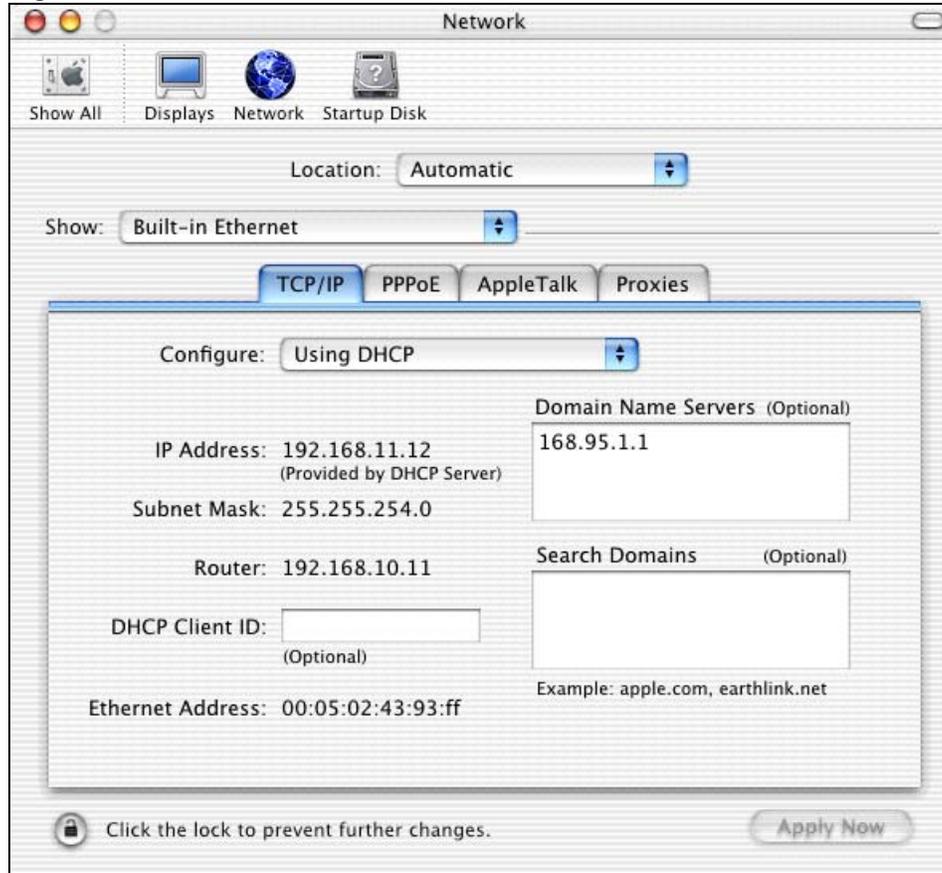
- 1** Click the **Apple** menu, and click **System Preferences** to open the **System Preferences** window.

Figure 174 Macintosh OS X: Apple Menu



- 2** Click **Network** in the icon bar.
 - Select **Automatic** from the **Location** list.
 - Select **Built-in Ethernet** from the **Show** list.
 - Click the **TCP/IP** tab.
- 3** For dynamically assigned settings, select **Using DHCP** from the **Configure** list.

Figure 175 Macintosh OS X: Network



- 4 For statically assigned settings, do the following:
 - From the **Configure** box, select **Manually**.
 - Type your IP address in the **IP Address** box.
 - Type your subnet mask in the **Subnet mask** box.
 - Type the IP address of your ZyXEL Device in the **Router address** box.
- 5 Click **Apply Now** and close the window.
- 6 Turn on your ZyXEL Device and restart your computer (if prompted).

Verifying Settings

Check your TCP/IP properties in the **Network** window.

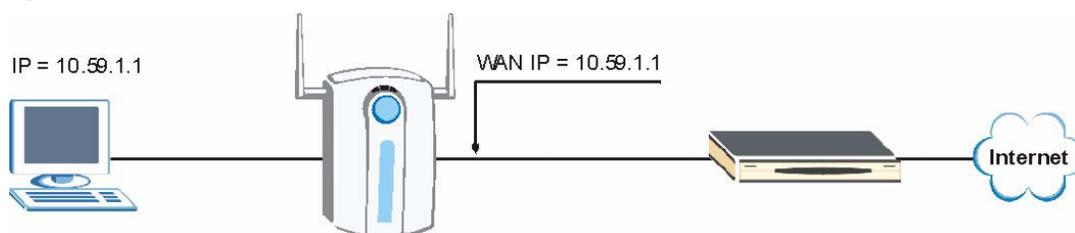
IP Address Assignment Conflicts

This appendix describes situations where IP address conflicts may occur. Subscribers with duplicate IP addresses will not be able to access the Internet.

Case A: The ZyXEL Device is using the same LAN and WAN IP addresses

The following figure shows an example where the ZyXEL Device is using a WAN IP address that is the same as the IP address of a computer on the LAN.

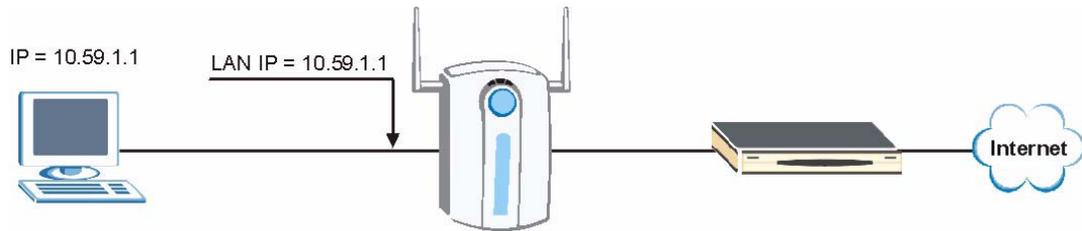
Figure 176 IP Address Conflicts: Case A



You must set the ZyXEL Device to use different LAN and WAN IP addresses on different subnets if you enable DHCP server on the ZyXEL Device. For example, you set the WAN IP address to 192.59.1.1 and the LAN IP address to 10.59.1.1. Otherwise, It is recommended the ZyXEL Device use a public WAN IP address.

Case B: The ZyXEL Device LAN IP address conflicts with the DHCP client IP address

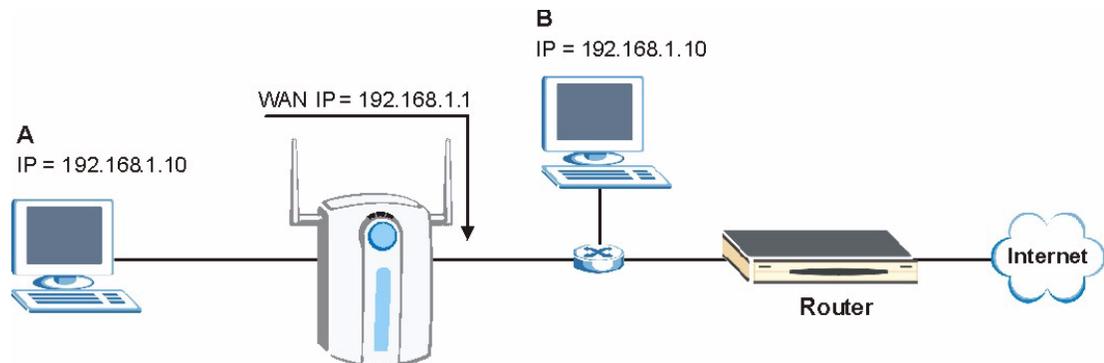
In the following figure, the ZyXEL Device is acting as a DHCP server. The ZyXEL Device assigns an IP address, which is the same as its LAN port IP address, to a DHCP client attached to the LAN.

Figure 177 IP Address Conflicts: Case B

To solve this problem, make sure the ZyXEL Device LAN IP address is not in the DHCP IP address pool.

Case C: The Subscriber IP address is the same as the IP address of a network device

The following figure depicts an example where the subscriber IP address is the same as the IP address of a network device not attached to the ZyXEL Device.

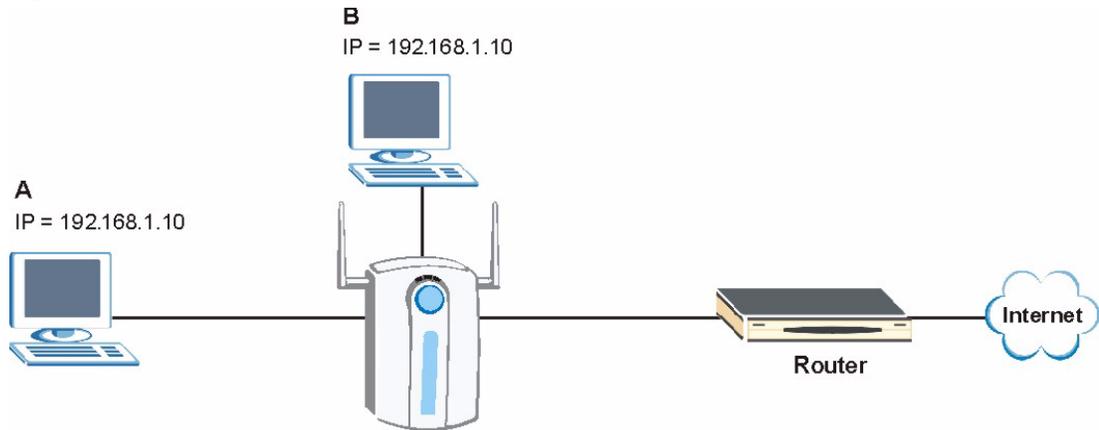
Figure 178 IP Address Conflicts: Case C

You must set the ZyXEL Device to use different LAN and WAN IP addresses on different subnets if you enable DHCP server on the ZyXEL Device. For example, you set the WAN IP address to 192.59.1.1 and the LAN IP address to 10.59.1.1. Otherwise, It is recommended the ZyXEL Device uses a public WAN IP address.

Case D: Two or more subscribers have the same IP address.

By converting all private IP addresses to the WAN IP address, the ZyXEL Device allows subscribers with different network configurations to access the Internet. However, there are situations where two or more subscribers are using the same private IP address. This may happen when a subscriber is configured to use a static (or fixed) IP address that is the same as the IP address the ZyXEL Device DHCP server assigns to another subscriber acting as a DHCP client.

In this case, the subscribers are not able to access the Internet.

Figure 179 IP Address Conflicts: Case D

This problem can be solved by adding a VLAN-enabled switch or set the computers to obtain IP addresses dynamically.

Wireless LANs

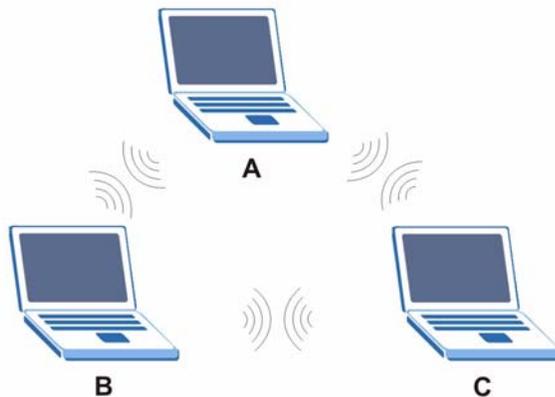
Wireless LAN Topologies

This section discusses ad-hoc and infrastructure wireless LAN topologies.

Ad-hoc Wireless LAN Configuration

The simplest WLAN configuration is an independent (Ad-hoc) WLAN that connects a set of computers with wireless stations (A, B, C). Any time two or more wireless adapters are within range of each other, they can set up an independent network, which is commonly referred to as an Ad-hoc network or Independent Basic Service Set (IBSS). The following diagram shows an example of notebook computers using wireless adapters to form an Ad-hoc wireless LAN.

Figure 180 Peer-to-Peer Communication in an Ad-hoc Network

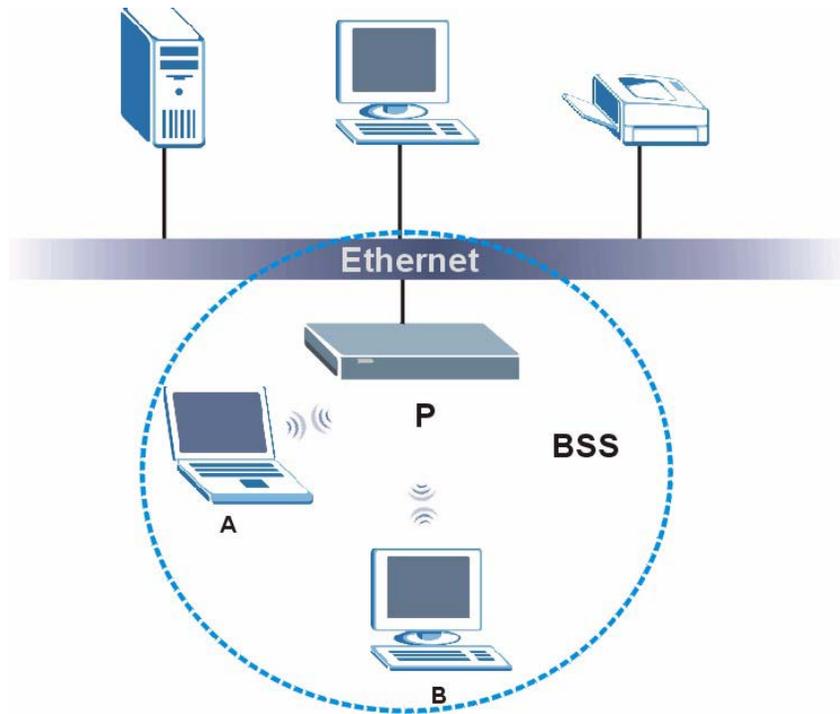


BSS

A Basic Service Set (BSS) exists when all communications between wireless stations or between a wireless station and a wired network client go through one access point (AP).

Intra-BSS traffic is traffic between wireless stations in the BSS. When Intra-BSS is enabled, wireless station A and B can access the wired network and communicate with each other.

When Intra-BSS is disabled, wireless station A and B can still access the wired network but cannot communicate with each other.

Figure 181 Basic Service Set

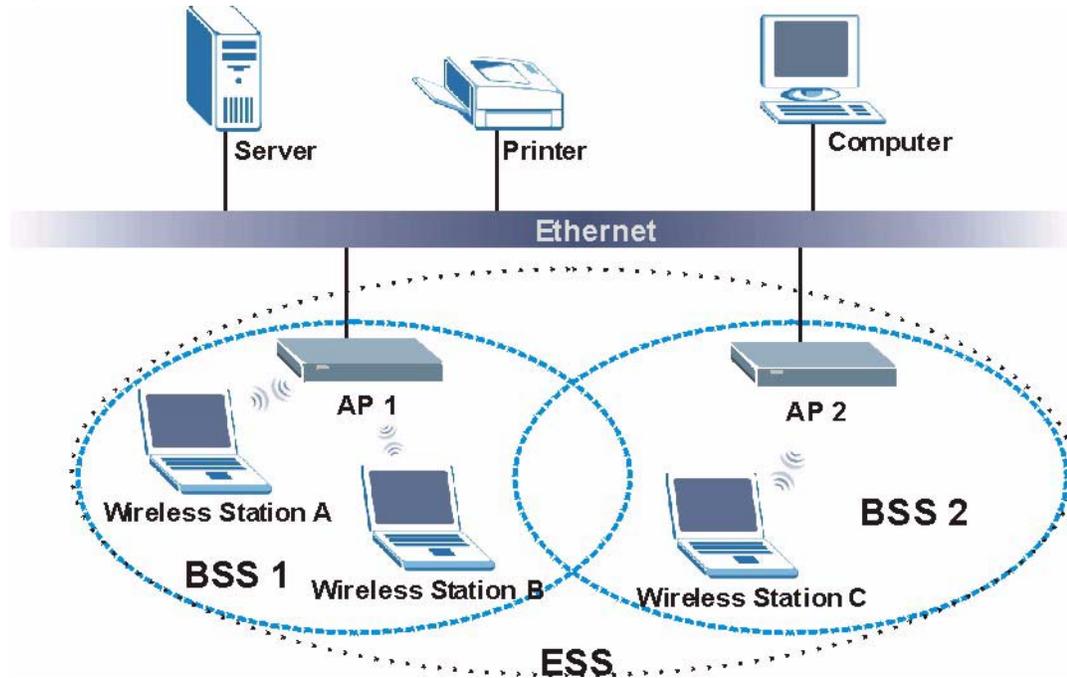
ESS

An Extended Service Set (ESS) consists of a series of overlapping BSSs, each containing an access point, with each access point connected together by a wired network. This wired connection between APs is called a Distribution System (DS).

This type of wireless LAN topology is called an Infrastructure WLAN. The Access Points not only provide communication with the wired network but also mediate wireless network traffic in the immediate neighborhood.

An ESSID (ESS IDentification) uniquely identifies each ESS. All access points and their associated wireless stations within the same ESS must have the same ESSID in order to communicate.

Figure 182 Infrastructure WLAN



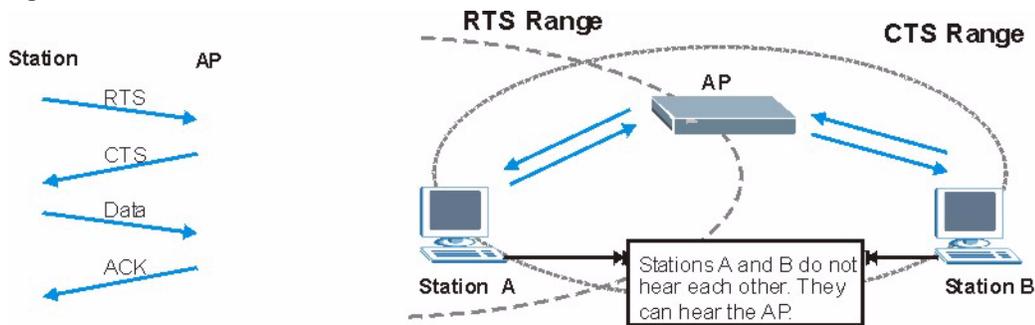
Channel

A channel is the radio frequency(ies) used by IEEE 802.11a/b/g wireless devices. Channels available depend on your geographical area. You may have a choice of channels (for your region) so you should use a different channel than an adjacent AP (access point) to reduce interference. Interference occurs when radio signals from different access points overlap causing interference and degrading performance.

Adjacent channels partially overlap however. To avoid interference due to overlap, your AP should be on a channel at least five channels away from a channel that an adjacent AP is using. For example, if your region has 11 channels and an adjacent AP is using channel 1, then you need to select a channel between 6 or 11.

RTS/CTS

A hidden node occurs when two stations are within range of the same access point, but are not within range of each other. The following figure illustrates a hidden node. Both stations (STA) are within range of the access point (AP) or wireless gateway, but out-of-range of each other, so they cannot "hear" each other, that is they do not know if the channel is currently being used. Therefore, they are considered hidden from each other.

Figure 183 RTS/CTS

When station A sends data to the AP, it might not know that the station B is already using the channel. If these two stations send data at the same time, collisions may occur when both sets of data arrive at the AP at the same time, resulting in a loss of messages for both stations.

RTS/CTS is designed to prevent collisions due to hidden nodes. An **RTS/CTS** defines the biggest size data frame you can send before an RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake is invoked.

When a data frame exceeds the **RTS/CTS** value you set (between 0 to 2432 bytes), the station that wants to transmit this frame must first send an RTS (Request To Send) message to the AP for permission to send it. The AP then responds with a CTS (Clear to Send) message to all other stations within its range to notify them to defer their transmission. It also reserves and confirms with the requesting station the time frame for the requested transmission.

Stations can send frames smaller than the specified **RTS/CTS** directly to the AP without the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake.

You should only configure **RTS/CTS** if the possibility of hidden nodes exists on your network and the "cost" of resending large frames is more than the extra network overhead involved in the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake.

If the **RTS/CTS** value is greater than the **Fragmentation Threshold** value (see next), then the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake will never occur as data frames will be fragmented before they reach **RTS/CTS** size.



Enabling the RTS Threshold causes redundant network overhead that could negatively affect the throughput performance instead of providing a remedy.

Fragmentation Threshold

A **Fragmentation Threshold** is the maximum data fragment size (between 256 and 2432 bytes) that can be sent in the wireless network before the AP will fragment the packet into smaller data frames.

A large **Fragmentation Threshold** is recommended for networks not prone to interference while you should set a smaller threshold for busy networks or networks that are prone to interference.

If the **Fragmentation Threshold** value is smaller than the **RTS/CTS** value (see previously) you set then the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake will never occur as data frames will be fragmented before they reach **RTS/CTS** size.



The ZyXEL Device may be prone to RF (Radio Frequency) interference from other 2.4 GHz devices such as microwave ovens, wireless phones, Bluetooth enabled devices, and other wireless LANs.

IEEE 802.1x

In June 2001, the IEEE 802.1x standard was designed to extend the features of IEEE 802.11 to support extended authentication as well as providing additional accounting and control features. It is supported by Windows XP and a number of network devices. Some advantages of IEEE 802.1x are:

- User based identification that allows for roaming.
- Support for RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service, RFC 2138, 2139) for centralized user profile and accounting management on a network RADIUS server.
- Support for EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol, RFC 2486) that allows additional authentication methods to be deployed with no changes to the access point or the wireless stations.

RADIUS

RADIUS is based on a client-server model that supports authentication, authorization and accounting. The access point is the client and the server is the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server handles the following tasks:

- Authentication
Determines the identity of the users.
- Authorization
Determines the network services available to authenticated users once they are connected to the network.
- Accounting
Keeps track of the client's network activity.

RADIUS is a simple package exchange in which your AP acts as a message relay between the wireless station and the network RADIUS server.

Types of RADIUS Messages

The following types of RADIUS messages are exchanged between the access point and the RADIUS server for user authentication:

- Access-Request
Sent by an access point requesting authentication.

- Access-Reject
Sent by a RADIUS server rejecting access.
- Access-Accept
Sent by a RADIUS server allowing access.
- Access-Challenge
Sent by a RADIUS server requesting more information in order to allow access. The access point sends a proper response from the user and then sends another Access-Request message.

The following types of RADIUS messages are exchanged between the access point and the RADIUS server for user accounting:

- Accounting-Request
Sent by the access point requesting accounting.
- Accounting-Response
Sent by the RADIUS server to indicate that it has started or stopped accounting.

In order to ensure network security, the access point and the RADIUS server use a shared secret key, which is a password, they both know. The key is not sent over the network. In addition to the shared key, password information exchanged is also encrypted to protect the network from unauthorized access.

Types of Authentication

This appendix discusses some popular authentication types: **EAP-MD5**, **EAP-TLS**, **EAP-TTLS**, **PEAP** and **LEAP**.

The type of authentication you use depends on the RADIUS server or the AP. Consult your network administrator for more information.

EAP-MD5 (Message-Digest Algorithm 5)

MD5 authentication is the simplest one-way authentication method. The authentication server sends a challenge to the wireless station. The wireless station ‘proves’ that it knows the password by encrypting the password with the challenge and sends back the information. Password is not sent in plain text.

However, MD5 authentication has some weaknesses. Since the authentication server needs to get the plaintext passwords, the passwords must be stored. Thus someone other than the authentication server may access the password file. In addition, it is possible to impersonate an authentication server as MD5 authentication method does not perform mutual authentication. Finally, MD5 authentication method does not support data encryption with dynamic session key. You must configure WEP encryption keys for data encryption.

EAP-TLS (Transport Layer Security)

With EAP-TLS, digital certifications are needed by both the server and the wireless stations for mutual authentication. The server presents a certificate to the client. After validating the identity of the server, the client sends a different certificate to the server. The exchange of certificates is done in the open before a secured tunnel is created. This makes user identity vulnerable to passive attacks. A digital certificate is an electronic ID card that authenticates the sender's identity. However, to implement EAP-TLS, you need a Certificate Authority (CA) to handle certificates, which imposes a management overhead.

EAP-TTLS (Tunneled Transport Layer Service)

EAP-TTLS is an extension of the EAP-TLS authentication that uses certificates for only the server-side authentications to establish a secure connection. Client authentication is then done by sending username and password through the secure connection, thus client identity is protected. For client authentication, EAP-TTLS supports EAP methods and legacy authentication methods such as PAP, CHAP, MS-CHAP and MS-CHAP v2.

PEAP (Protected EAP)

Like EAP-TTLS, server-side certificate authentication is used to establish a secure connection, then use simple username and password methods through the secured connection to authenticate the clients, thus hiding client identity. However, PEAP only supports EAP methods, such as EAP-MD5, EAP-MSCHAPv2 and EAP-GTC (EAP-Generic Token Card), for client authentication. EAP-GTC is implemented only by Cisco.

LEAP

LEAP (Lightweight Extensible Authentication Protocol) is a Cisco implementation of IEEE 802.1x.

Dynamic WEP Key Exchange

The AP maps a unique key that is generated with the RADIUS server. This key expires when the wireless connection times out, disconnects or reauthentication times out. A new WEP key is generated each time reauthentication is performed.

If this feature is enabled, it is not necessary to configure a default encryption key in the Wireless screen. You may still configure and store keys here, but they will not be used while Dynamic WEP is enabled.



EAP-MD5 cannot be used with dynamic WEP key exchange.

For added security, certificate-based authentications (EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS and PEAP) use dynamic keys for data encryption. They are often deployed in corporate environments, but for public deployment, a simple user name and password pair is more practical.

The following table is a comparison of the features of authentication types.

Table 90 Comparison of EAP Authentication Types

	EAP-MD5	EAP-TLS	EAP-TTLS	PEAP	LEAP
Mutual Authentication	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Certificate – Client	No	Yes	Optional	Optional	No
Certificate – Server	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Dynamic Key Exchange	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Credential Integrity	None	Strong	Strong	Strong	Moderate
Deployment Difficulty	Easy	Hard	Moderate	Moderate	Moderate
Client Identity Protection	No	No	Yes	Yes	No

WPA(2)

Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) is a subset of the IEEE 802.11i standard. WPA 2 (IEEE 802.11i) is a wireless security standard that defines stronger encryption, authentication and key management than WPA.

Key differences between WPA(2) and WEP are improved data encryption and user authentication.

Encryption

Both WPA and WPA2 improve data encryption by using Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP), Message Integrity Check (MIC) and IEEE 802.1x. In addition to TKIP, WPA2 also uses Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) in the Counter mode with Cipher block chaining Message authentication code Protocol (CCMP) to offer stronger encryption.

Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) uses 128-bit keys that are dynamically generated and distributed by the authentication server. It includes a per-packet key mixing function, a Message Integrity Check (MIC) named Michael, an extended initialization vector (IV) with sequencing rules, and a re-keying mechanism.

TKIP regularly changes and rotates the encryption keys so that the same encryption key is never used twice. The RADIUS server distributes a Pairwise Master Key (PMK) key to the AP that then sets up a key hierarchy and management system, using the pair-wise key to dynamically generate unique data encryption keys to encrypt every data packet that is wirelessly communicated between the AP and the wireless clients. This all happens in the background automatically.

WPA2 AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) is a block cipher that uses a 256-bit mathematical algorithm called Rijndael.

The Message Integrity Check (MIC) is designed to prevent an attacker from capturing data packets, altering them and resending them. The MIC provides a strong mathematical function in which the receiver and the transmitter each compute and then compare the MIC. If they do not match, it is assumed that the data has been tampered with and the packet is dropped.

By generating unique data encryption keys for every data packet and by creating an integrity checking mechanism (MIC), TKIP makes it much more difficult to decode data on a Wi-Fi network than WEP, making it difficult for an intruder to break into the network.

The encryption mechanisms used for WPA and WPA-PSK are the same. The only difference between the two is that WPA-PSK uses a simple common password, instead of user-specific credentials. The common-password approach makes WPA-PSK susceptible to brute-force password-guessing attacks but it's still an improvement over WEP as it employs an easier-to-use, consistent, single, alphanumeric password.

User Authentication

WPA or WPA2 applies IEEE 802.1x and Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) to authenticate wireless clients using an external RADIUS database.

If both an AP and the wireless clients support WPA2 and you have an external RADIUS server, use WPA2 for stronger data encryption. If you don't have an external RADIUS server, you should use WPA2 -PSK (WPA2 -Pre-Shared Key) that only requires a single (identical) password entered into each access point, wireless gateway and wireless client. As long as the passwords match, a wireless client will be granted access to a WLAN.

If the AP or the wireless clients do not support WPA2, just use WPA or WPA-PSK depending on whether you have an external RADIUS server or not.

Select WEP only when the AP and/or wireless clients do not support WPA or WPA2. WEP is less secure than WPA or WPA2.

Security Parameters Summary

Refer to this table to see what other security parameters you should configure for each Authentication Method/ key management protocol type. MAC address filters are not dependent on how you configure these security features.

Table 91 Wireless Security Relational Matrix

AUTHENTICATION METHOD/ KEY MANAGEMENT PROTOCOL	ENCRYPTION METHOD	ENTER MANUAL KEY	ENABLE IEEE 802.1X
Open	None	No	No
Open	WEP	No	Enable with Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Enable without Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	No
Shared	WEP	No	Enable with Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Enable without Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	No
WPA	TKIP	No	Yes
WPA-PSK	TKIP	Yes	No
WPA2	AES	No	Yes
WPA2-PSK	AES	Yes	No

Indoor Installation Recommendations

An antenna couples RF signals onto air. A transmitter within a wireless device sends an RF signal to the antenna, which propagates the signal through the air. The antenna also operates in reverse by capturing RF signals from the air.

Positioning the antennas properly increases the range and coverage area of a wireless LAN.

Antenna Characteristics

Frequency

An antenna in the frequency of 2.4GHz (IEEE 802.11b) or 5GHz(IEEE 802.11a) is needed to communicate efficiently in a wireless LAN.

Radiation Pattern

A radiation pattern is a diagram that allows you to visualize the shape of the antenna's coverage area.

Antenna Gain

Antenna gain, measured in dB (decibel), is the increase in coverage within the RF beam width. Higher antenna gain improves the range of the signal for better communications.

For an indoor site, each 1 dB increase in antenna gain results in a range increase of approximately 2.5%. For an unobstructed outdoor site, each 1dB increase in gain results in a range increase of approximately 5%. Actual results may vary depending on the network environment.

Antenna gain is sometimes specified in dBi, which is how much the antenna increases the signal power compared to using an isotropic antenna. An isotropic antenna is a theoretical perfect antenna that sends out radio signals equally well in all directions. dBi represents the true gain that the antenna provides.

Types of Antennas For WLAN

There are two types of antennas used for wireless LAN applications.

- Omni-directional antennas send the RF signal out in all directions on a horizontal plane. The coverage area is torus-shaped (like a donut) which makes these antennas ideal for a room environment. With a wide coverage area, it is possible to make circular overlapping coverage areas with multiple access points.
- Directional antennas concentrate the RF signal in a beam, like a flashlight does with the light from its bulb. The angle of the beam determines the width of the coverage pattern. Angles typically range from 20 degrees (very directional) to 120 degrees (less directional). Directional antennas are ideal for hallways and outdoor point-to-point applications.

Positioning Antennas

In general, antennas should be mounted as high as practically possible and free of obstructions. In point-to-point application, position both antennas at the same height and in a direct line of sight to each other to attain the best performance.

For omni-directional antennas mounted on a table, desk, and so on, point the antenna up. For omni-directional antennas mounted on a wall or ceiling, point the antenna down. For a single AP application, place omni-directional antennas as close to the center of the coverage area as possible.

For directional antennas, point the antenna in the direction of the desired coverage area.

Pop-up Windows, JavaScripts and Java Permissions

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device.
- JavaScripts (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).



Internet Explorer 6 screens are used here. Screens for other Internet Explorer versions may vary.

Internet Explorer Pop-up Blockers

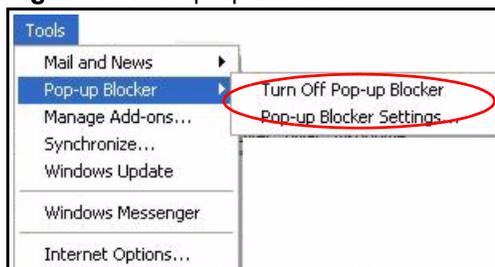
You may have to disable pop-up blocking to log into your device.

Either disable pop-up blocking (enabled by default in Windows XP SP (Service Pack) 2) or allow pop-up blocking and create an exception for your device's IP address.

Disable pop-up Blockers

- 1 In Internet Explorer, select **Tools, Pop-up Blocker** and then select **Turn Off Pop-up Blocker**.

Figure 184 Pop-up Blocker



You can also check if pop-up blocking is disabled in the **Pop-up Blocker** section in the **Privacy** tab.

- 1 In Internet Explorer, select **Tools, Internet Options, Privacy**.

- 2 Clear the **Block pop-ups** check box in the **Pop-up Blocker** section of the screen. This disables any web pop-up blockers you may have enabled.

Figure 185 Internet Options: Privacy



- 3 Click **Apply** to save this setting.

Enable pop-up Blockers with Exceptions

Alternatively, if you only want to allow pop-up windows from your device, see the following steps.

- 1 In Internet Explorer, select **Tools, Internet Options** and then the **Privacy** tab.
- 2 Select **Settings...** to open the **Pop-up Blocker Settings** screen.

Figure 186 Internet Options: Privacy

- 3 Type the IP address of your device (the web page that you do not want to have blocked) with the prefix "http://". For example, http://192.168.167.1.
- 4 Click **Add** to move the IP address to the list of **Allowed sites**.

Figure 187 Pop-up Blocker Settings

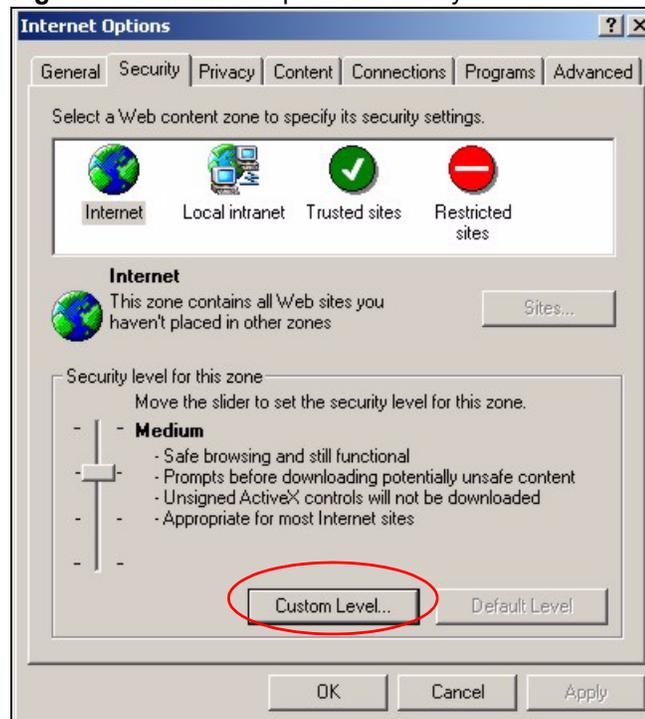
- 5 Click **Close** to return to the **Privacy** screen.
- 6 Click **Apply** to save this setting.

JavaScripts

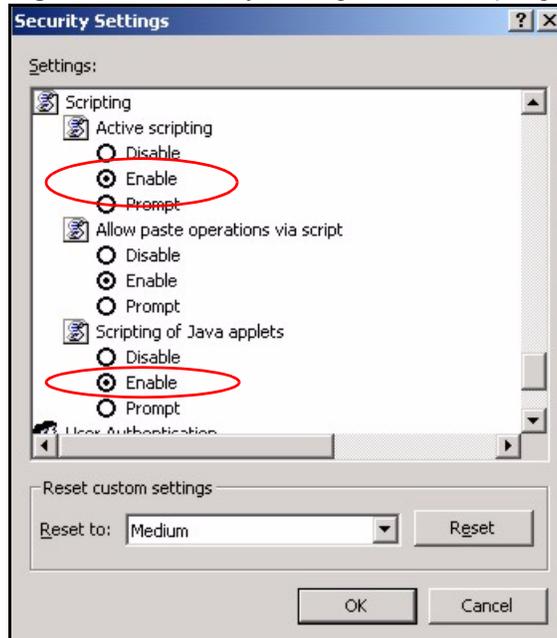
If pages of the web configurator do not display properly in Internet Explorer, check that JavaScripts are allowed.

- 1 In Internet Explorer, click **Tools, Internet Options** and then the **Security** tab.

Figure 188 Internet Options: Security

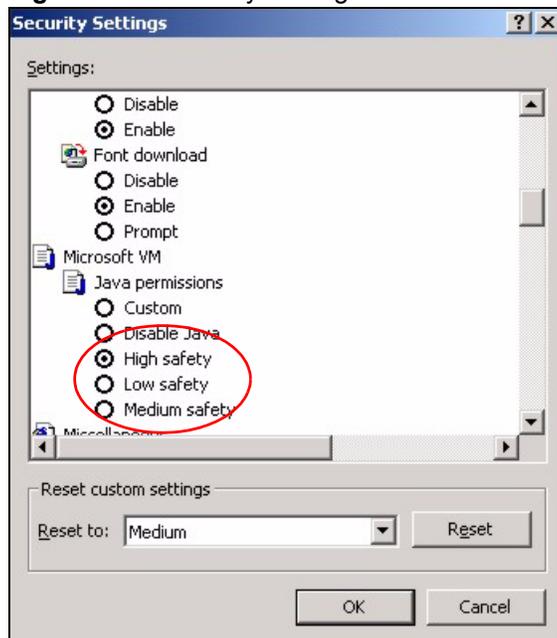


- 2 Click the **Custom Level...** button.
- 3 Scroll down to **Scripting**.
- 4 Under **Active scripting** make sure that **Enable** is selected (the default).
- 5 Under **Scripting of Java applets** make sure that **Enable** is selected (the default).
- 6 Click **OK** to close the window.

Figure 189 Security Settings - Java Scripting

Java Permissions

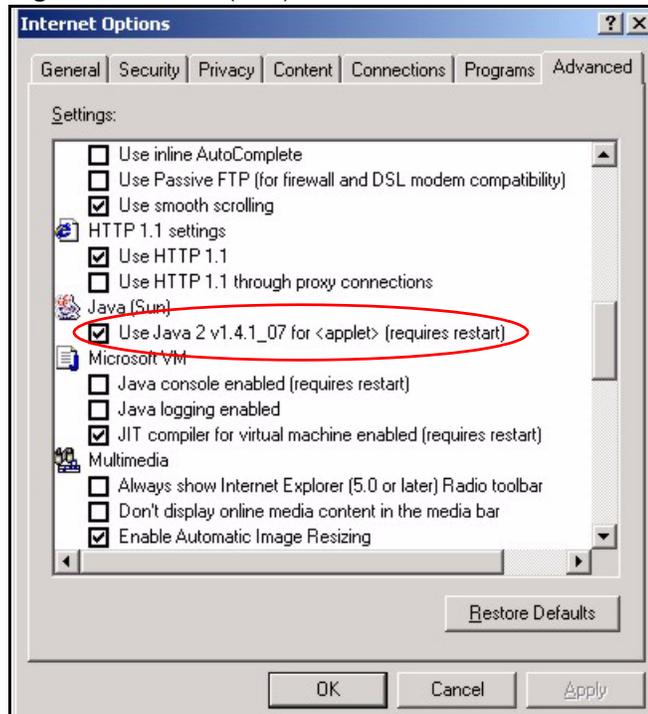
- 1 From Internet Explorer, click **Tools, Internet Options** and then the **Security** tab.
- 2 Click the **Custom Level...** button.
- 3 Scroll down to **Microsoft VM**.
- 4 Under **Java permissions** make sure that a safety level is selected.
- 5 Click **OK** to close the window.

Figure 190 Security Settings - Java

JAVA (Sun)

- 1 From Internet Explorer, click **Tools, Internet Options** and then the **Advanced** tab.
- 2 Make sure that **Use Java 2 for <applet>** under **Java (Sun)** is selected.
- 3 Click **OK** to close the window.

Figure 191 Java (Sun)



IP Addresses and Subnetting

This appendix introduces IP addresses and subnet masks.

IP addresses identify individual devices on a network. Every networking device (including computers, servers, routers, printers, etc.) needs an IP address to communicate across the network. These networking devices are also known as hosts.

Subnet masks determine the maximum number of possible hosts on a network. You can also use subnet masks to divide one network into multiple sub-networks.

Introduction to IP Addresses

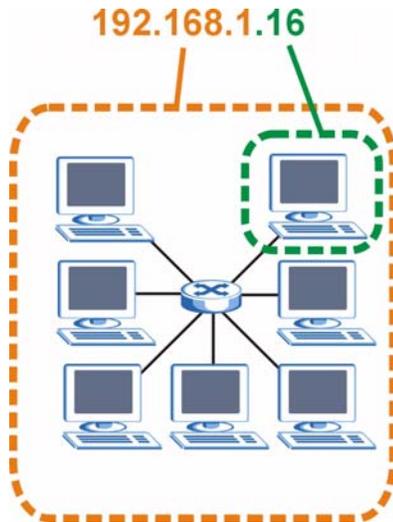
One part of the IP address is the network number, and the other part is the host ID. In the same way that houses on a street share a common street name, the hosts on a network share a common network number. Similarly, as each house has its own house number, each host on the network has its own unique identifying number - the host ID. Routers use the network number to send packets to the correct network, while the host ID determines to which host on the network the packets are delivered.

Structure

An IP address is made up of four parts, written in dotted decimal notation (for example, 192.168.1.1). Each of these four parts is known as an octet. An octet is an eight-digit binary number (for example 11000000, which is 192 in decimal notation).

Therefore, each octet has a possible range of 00000000 to 11111111 in binary, or 0 to 255 in decimal.

The following figure shows an example IP address in which the first three octets (192.168.1) are the network number, and the fourth octet (16) is the host ID.

Figure 192 Network Number and Host ID

How much of the IP address is the network number and how much is the host ID varies according to the subnet mask.

Subnet Masks

A subnet mask is used to determine which bits are part of the network number, and which bits are part of the host ID (using a logical AND operation). The term “subnet” is short for “sub-network”.

A subnet mask has 32 bits. If a bit in the subnet mask is a “1” then the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the network number. If a bit in the subnet mask is “0” then the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the host ID.

The following example shows a subnet mask identifying the network number (in bold text) and host ID of an IP address (192.168.1.2 in decimal).

Table 92 Subnet Masks

	1ST OCTET: (192)	2ND OCTET: (168)	3RD OCTET: (1)	4TH OCTET (2)
IP Address (Binary)	11000000	10101000	00000001	00000010
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111	11111111	11111111	00000000
Network Number	11000000	10101000	00000001	
Host ID				00000010

By convention, subnet masks always consist of a continuous sequence of ones beginning from the leftmost bit of the mask, followed by a continuous sequence of zeros, for a total number of 32 bits.

Subnet masks can be referred to by the size of the network number part (the bits with a “1” value). For example, an “8-bit mask” means that the first 8 bits of the mask are ones and the remaining 24 bits are zeroes.

Subnet masks are expressed in dotted decimal notation just like IP addresses. The following examples show the binary and decimal notation for 8-bit, 16-bit, 24-bit and 29-bit subnet masks.

Table 93 Subnet Masks

	BINARY				DECIMAL
	1ST OCTET	2ND OCTET	3RD OCTET	4TH OCTET	
8-bit mask	11111111	00000000	00000000	00000000	255.0.0.0
16-bit mask	11111111	11111111	00000000	00000000	255.255.0.0
24-bit mask	11111111	11111111	11111111	00000000	255.255.255.0
29-bit mask	11111111	11111111	11111111	11111000	255.255.255.248

Network Size

The size of the network number determines the maximum number of possible hosts you can have on your network. The larger the number of network number bits, the smaller the number of remaining host ID bits.

An IP address with host IDs of all zeros is the IP address of the network (192.168.1.0 with a 24-bit subnet mask, for example). An IP address with host IDs of all ones is the broadcast address for that network (192.168.1.255 with a 24-bit subnet mask, for example).

As these two IP addresses cannot be used for individual hosts, calculate the maximum number of possible hosts in a network as follows:

Table 94 Maximum Host Numbers

SUBNET MASK		HOST ID SIZE		MAXIMUM NUMBER OF HOSTS
8 bits	255.0.0.0	24 bits	$2^{24} - 2$	16777214
16 bits	255.255.0.0	16 bits	$2^{16} - 2$	65534
24 bits	255.255.255.0	8 bits	$2^8 - 2$	254
29 bits	255.255.255.248	3 bits	$2^3 - 2$	6

Notation

Since the mask is always a continuous number of ones beginning from the left, followed by a continuous number of zeros for the remainder of the 32 bit mask, you can simply specify the number of ones instead of writing the value of each octet. This is usually specified by writing a “/” followed by the number of bits in the mask after the address.

For example, 192.1.1.0 /25 is equivalent to saying 192.1.1.0 with subnet mask 255.255.255.128.

The following table shows some possible subnet masks using both notations.

Table 95 Alternative Subnet Mask Notation

SUBNET MASK	ALTERNATIVE NOTATION	LAST OCTET (BINARY)	LAST OCTET (DECIMAL)
255.255.255.0	/24	0000 0000	0
255.255.255.128	/25	1000 0000	128

Table 95 Alternative Subnet Mask Notation (continued)

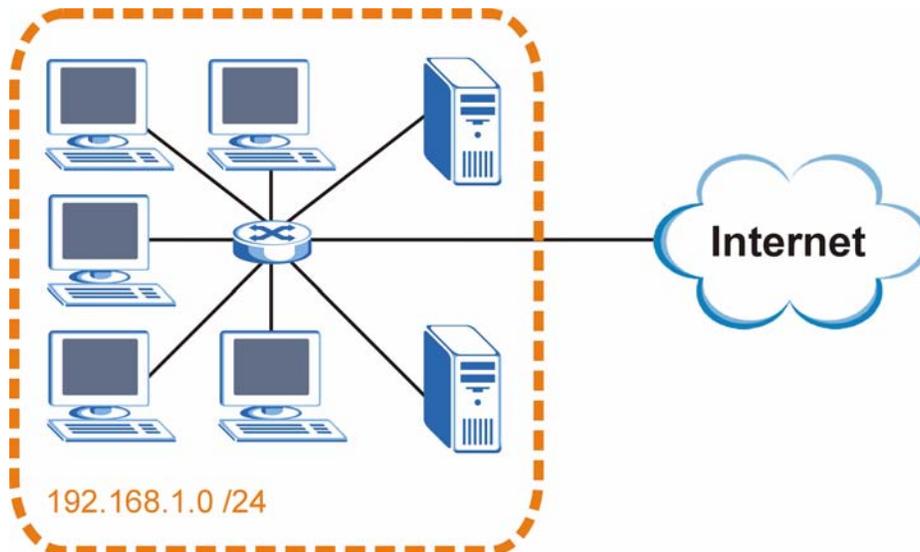
SUBNET MASK	ALTERNATIVE NOTATION	LAST OCTET (BINARY)	LAST OCTET (DECIMAL)
255.255.255.192	/26	1100 0000	192
255.255.255.224	/27	1110 0000	224
255.255.255.240	/28	1111 0000	240
255.255.255.248	/29	1111 1000	248
255.255.255.252	/30	1111 1100	252

Subnetting

You can use subnetting to divide one network into multiple sub-networks. In the following example a network administrator creates two sub-networks to isolate a group of servers from the rest of the company network for security reasons.

In this example, the company network address is 192.168.1.0. The first three octets of the address (192.168.1) are the network number, and the remaining octet is the host ID, allowing a maximum of $2^8 - 2$ or 254 possible hosts.

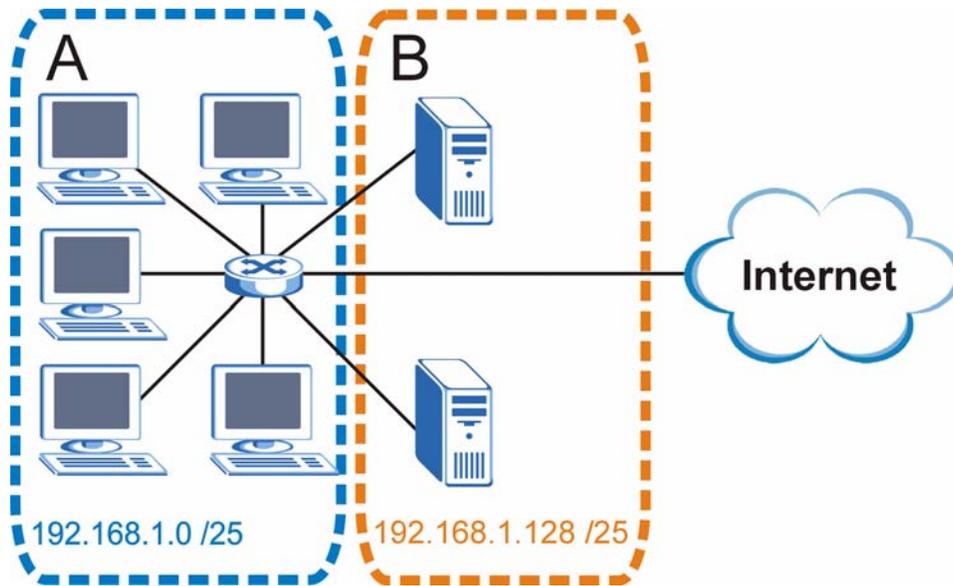
The following figure shows the company network before subnetting.

Figure 193 Subnetting Example: Before Subnetting

You can “borrow” one of the host ID bits to divide the network 192.168.1.0 into two separate sub-networks. The subnet mask is now 25 bits (255.255.255.128 or /25).

The “borrowed” host ID bit can have a value of either 0 or 1, allowing two subnets; 192.168.1.0 /25 and 192.168.1.128 /25.

The following figure shows the company network after subnetting. There are now two sub-networks, **A** and **B**.

Figure 194 Subnetting Example: After Subnetting

In a 25-bit subnet the host ID has 7 bits, so each sub-network has a maximum of $2^7 - 2$ or 126 possible hosts (a host ID of all zeroes is the subnet's address itself, all ones is the subnet's broadcast address).

192.168.1.0 with mask 255.255.255.128 is subnet **A** itself, and 192.168.1.127 with mask 255.255.255.128 is its broadcast address. Therefore, the lowest IP address that can be assigned to an actual host for subnet **A** is 192.168.1.1 and the highest is 192.168.1.126.

Similarly, the host ID range for subnet **B** is 192.168.1.129 to 192.168.1.254.

Example: Four Subnets

The previous example illustrated using a 25-bit subnet mask to divide a 24-bit address into two subnets. Similarly, to divide a 24-bit address into four subnets, you need to “borrow” two host ID bits to give four possible combinations (00, 01, 10 and 11). The subnet mask is 26 bits (11111111.11111111.11111111.11000000) or 255.255.255.192.

Each subnet contains 6 host ID bits, giving $2^6 - 2$ or 62 hosts for each subnet (a host ID of all zeroes is the subnet itself, all ones is the subnet's broadcast address).

Table 96 Subnet 1

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address (Decimal)	192.168.1.	0
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	00000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.0	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.1	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.63	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.62	

Table 97 Subnet 2

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	64
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	01000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.64	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.65	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.127	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.126	

Table 98 Subnet 3

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	128
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	10000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.128	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.129	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.191	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.190	

Table 99 Subnet 4

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	192
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	11000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.192	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.193	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.255	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.254	

Example: Eight Subnets

Similarly, use a 27-bit mask to create eight subnets (000, 001, 010, 011, 100, 101, 110 and 111).

The following table shows IP address last octet values for each subnet.

Table 100 Eight Subnets

SUBNET	SUBNET ADDRESS	FIRST ADDRESS	LAST ADDRESS	BROADCAST ADDRESS
1	0	1	30	31
2	32	33	62	63
3	64	65	94	95
4	96	97	126	127

Table 100 Eight Subnets (continued)

SUBNET	SUBNET ADDRESS	FIRST ADDRESS	LAST ADDRESS	BROADCAST ADDRESS
5	128	129	158	159
6	160	161	190	191
7	192	193	222	223
8	224	225	254	255

Subnet Planning

The following table is a summary for subnet planning on a network with a 24-bit network number.

Table 101 24-bit Network Number Subnet Planning

NO. "BORROWED" HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
1	255.255.255.128 (/25)	2	126
2	255.255.255.192 (/26)	4	62
3	255.255.255.224 (/27)	8	30
4	255.255.255.240 (/28)	16	14
5	255.255.255.248 (/29)	32	6
6	255.255.255.252 (/30)	64	2
7	255.255.255.254 (/31)	128	1

The following table is a summary for subnet planning on a network with a 16-bit network number.

Table 102 16-bit Network Number Subnet Planning

NO. "BORROWED" HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
1	255.255.128.0 (/17)	2	32766
2	255.255.192.0 (/18)	4	16382
3	255.255.224.0 (/19)	8	8190
4	255.255.240.0 (/20)	16	4094
5	255.255.248.0 (/21)	32	2046
6	255.255.252.0 (/22)	64	1022
7	255.255.254.0 (/23)	128	510
8	255.255.255.0 (/24)	256	254
9	255.255.255.128 (/25)	512	126
10	255.255.255.192 (/26)	1024	62
11	255.255.255.224 (/27)	2048	30
12	255.255.255.240 (/28)	4096	14
13	255.255.255.248 (/29)	8192	6

Table 102 16-bit Network Number Subnet Planning (continued)

NO. "BORROWED" HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
14	255.255.255.252 (/30)	16384	2
15	255.255.255.254 (/31)	32768	1

Configuring IP Addresses

Where you obtain your network number depends on your particular situation. If the ISP or your network administrator assigns you a block of registered IP addresses, follow their instructions in selecting the IP addresses and the subnet mask.

If the ISP did not explicitly give you an IP network number, then most likely you have a single user account and the ISP will assign you a dynamic IP address when the connection is established. If this is the case, it is recommended that you select a network number from 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.0. The Internet Assigned Number Authority (IANA) reserved this block of addresses specifically for private use; please do not use any other number unless you are told otherwise. You must also enable Network Address Translation (NAT) on the ZyXEL Device.

Once you have decided on the network number, pick an IP address for your ZyXEL Device that is easy to remember (for instance, 192.168.1.1) but make sure that no other device on your network is using that IP address.

The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. Your ZyXEL Device will compute the subnet mask automatically based on the IP address that you entered. You don't need to change the subnet mask computed by the ZyXEL Device unless you are instructed to do otherwise.

Private IP Addresses

Every machine on the Internet must have a unique address. If your networks are isolated from the Internet (running only between two branch offices, for example) you can assign any IP addresses to the hosts without problems. However, the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) has reserved the following three blocks of IP addresses specifically for private networks:

- 10.0.0.0 — 10.255.255.255
- 172.16.0.0 — 172.31.255.255
- 192.168.0.0 — 192.168.255.255

You can obtain your IP address from the IANA, from an ISP, or it can be assigned from a private network. If you belong to a small organization and your Internet access is through an ISP, the ISP can provide you with the Internet addresses for your local networks. On the other hand, if you are part of a much larger organization, you should consult your network administrator for the appropriate IP addresses.

Regardless of your particular situation, do not create an arbitrary IP address; always follow the guidelines above. For more information on address assignment, please refer to RFC 1597, *Address Allocation for Private Internets* and RFC 1466, *Guidelines for Management of IP Address Space*.

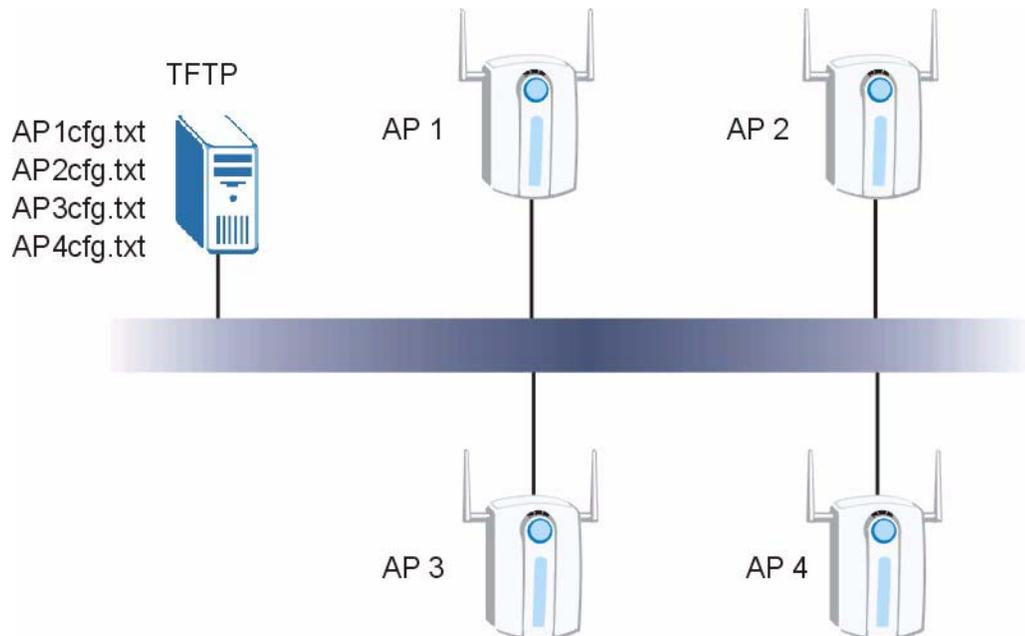
Text File Based Auto Configuration

This chapter describes how administrators can use text configuration files to configure the wireless LAN settings for multiple APs.

Text File Based Auto Configuration Overview

You can use plain text configuration files to configure the wireless LAN settings on multiple APs. The AP can automatically get a configuration file from a TFTP server at startup or after renewing DHCP client information.

Figure 195 Text File Based Auto Configuration



Use one of the following methods to give the AP the IP address of the TFTP server where you store the configuration files and the name of the configuration file that it should download.

You can have a different configuration file for each AP. You can also have multiple APs use the same configuration file.



If adjacent APs use the same configuration file, you should leave out the channel setting since they could interfere with each other's wireless traffic.

Auto Configuration by DHCP

A DHCP response can use options 66 and 67 to assign a TFTP server IP address and a filename. If the AP is configured as a DHCP client, these settings can be used to perform auto configuration.

Table 103 Auto Configuration by DHCP

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
wcfg autocfg dhcp [enable disable]	Turn configuration of TFTP server IP address and filename through DHCP on or off.

If this feature is enabled and the DHCP response provides a TFTP server IP address and a filename, the AP will try to download the file from the specified TFTP server. The AP then uses the file to configure wireless LAN settings.



Not all DHCP servers allow you to specify options 66 and 67.

Manual Configuration

Use the following command to manually configure a TFTP server IP address and a file name for the AP to use for auto provisioning whenever the AP starts up. See [Section 23.1 on page 217](#) for how to access the Command Interpreter (CI).

Table 104 Manual Configuration

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
wcfg autocfg server [IP] [filename]	Specify the TFTP server IP address and file name from which the AP is to download a configuration file whenever the AP starts up.

Configuration Via SNMP

You can configure and trigger the auto configuration remotely via SNMP.

Use the following procedure to have the AP download the configuration file.

Table 105 Configuration via SNMP

STEPS	MIB VARIABLE	VALUE
Step 1	pwTftpServer	Set the IP address of the TFTP server.
Step 2	pwTftpFileName	Set the file name, for example, devicecfg.txt.

Table 105 Configuration via SNMP

STEPS	MIB VARIABLE	VALUE
Step 3	pwTftpFileType	Set to 3 (text configuration file).
Step 4	pwTftpOpCommand	Set to 2 (download).

Verifying Your Configuration File Upload Via SNMP

You can use SNMP management software to display the configuration file version currently on the device by using the following MIB.

Table 106 Displaying the File Version

ITEM	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
pwCfgVersion	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.9.1.2	This displays the current configuration file version.

Troubleshooting Via SNMP

If you have any difficulties with the configuration file upload, you can try using the following MIB 10 to 20 seconds after using SNMP to have the AP download the configuration file.

Table 107 Displaying the File Version

ITEM	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
pwTftpOpStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.9.1.6	This displays the current operating status of the TFTP client.

Configuration File Format

The text based configuration file must use the following format.

Figure 196 Configuration File Format

```

!#ZYXEL PROWLAN
!#VERSION 12
wcfg security 1 xxx
wcfg security save
wcfg ssid 1 xxx
wcfg ssid save

```

The first line must be `!#ZYXEL PROWLAN`.

The second line must specify the file version. The AP compares the file version with the version of the last configuration file that it downloaded. If the version of the downloaded file is the same or smaller (older), the AP ignores the file. If the version of the downloaded file is larger (newer), the AP uses the file.

Configuration File Rules

You can only use the `wlan` and `wcfg` commands in the configuration file. The AP ignores other ZyNOS commands but continues to check the next command.

The AP ignores any improperly formatted commands and continues to check the next line.

If there are any errors while processing the configuration file, the AP generates a message with the line number and reason for the first error (subsequent errors during the processing of an individual configuration file are not recorded). You can use SNMP management software to display the message by using the following MIB.

Table 108 Displaying the Auto Configuration Status

ITEM	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
pwAutoCfgMessage	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.9.1.9	Auto configuration status message string

The commands will be executed line by line just like if you entered them in a console or Telnet CI session. Be careful to ensure the integrity of the whole AP configuration. If there are existing settings in the AP, the newly loaded configuration file will either coexist with the previous settings or replace them.

You can zip each configuration file. You must use the store compression method and a .zip file extension. When zipping a configuration file, you can also add password protection using the same password that you use to log into the AP.

wcfg Command Configuration File Examples

These example configuration files use the `wcfg` command to configure security and SSID profiles.

Figure 197 WEP Configuration File Example

```

!#ZYXEL PROWLAN
!#VERSION 11
wcfg security 1 name Test-wep
wcfg security 1 security wep
wcfg security 1 wep keysize 64 ascii
wcfg security 1 wep key1 abcde
wcfg security 1 wep key2 bcdef
wcfg security 1 wep key3 cdefg
wcfg security 1 wep key4 defgh
wcfg security 1 wep keyindex 1
wcfg security save
wcfg ssid 1 name ssid-wep
wcfg ssid 1 security Test-wep
wcfg ssid 1 isolation disable
wcfg ssid 1 macfilter disable
wcfg ssid save

```

Figure 198 802.1X Configuration File Example

```
!#ZYXEL PROWLAN
!#VERSION 12
wcfg security 2 name Test-8021x
wcfg security 2 mode 8021x-static128
wcfg security 2 wep key1 abcdefghijklm
wcfg security 2 wep key2 bcdefghijklmn
wcfg security 2 wep keyindex 1
wcfg security 2 reauthtime 1800
wcfg security 2 idletime 3600
wcfg security save
wcfg radius 2 name radius-rd
wcfg radius 2 primary 172.23.3.4 1812 1234 enable
wcfg radius 2 backup 172.23.3.5 1812 1234 enable
wcfg radius save
wcfg ssid 2 name ssid-8021x
wcfg ssid 2 security Test-8021x
wcfg ssid 2 radius radius-rd
wcfg ssid 2 qos 4
wcfg ssid 2 l2isolation disable
wcfg ssid 2 macfilter disable
wcfg ssid save
```

Figure 199 WPA-PSK Configuration File Example

```
!#ZYXEL PROWLAN
!#VERSION 13
wcfg security 3 name Test-wpapsk
wcfg security 3 mode wpapsk
wcfg security 3 passphrase qwertyuiop
wcfg security 3 reauthtime 1800
wcfg security 3 idletime 3600
wcfg security 3 groupkeytime 1800
wcfg security save
wcfg ssid 3 name ssid-wpapsk
wcfg ssid 3 security Test-wpapsk
wcfg ssid 3 qos 4
wcfg ssid 3 l2isolation disable
wcfg ssid 3 macfilter disable
wcfg ssid save
```

Figure 200 WPA Configuration File Example

```
!#ZYXEL PROWLAN
!#VERSION 14
wcfg security 4 name Test-wpa
wcfg security 4 mode wpa
wcfg security 4 reauthtime 1800
wcfg security 4 idletime 3600
wcfg security 4 groupkeytime 1800
wcfg security save
wcfg radius 4 name radius-rd1
wcfg radius 4 primary 172.0.20.38 1812 20 enable
wcfg radius 4 backup 172.0.20.39 1812 20 enable
wcfg radius save
wcfg ssid 4 name ssid-wpa
wcfg ssid 4 security Test-wpa
wcfg ssid 4 qos 4
wcfg ssid 4 l2isolation disable
wcfg ssid 4 macfilter disable
wcfg ssid save
```

wlan Command Configuration File Example

This example configuration file uses the `wlan` command to configure the AP to use the security and SSID profiles from the `wcfg` command configuration file examples and general wireless settings. You could actually combine all of this chapter's example configuration files into a single configuration file. Remember that the commands are applied in order. So for example, you would place the commands that create security and SSID profiles before the commands that tell the AP to use those profiles.

Figure 201 wlan Configuration File Example

```
!#ZYXEL PROWLAN
!#VERSION 15
wcfg ssid 1 name ssid-wep
wcfg ssid 1 security Test-wep
wcfg ssid 2 name ssid-8021x
wcfg ssid 2 security Test-8021x
wcfg ssid 2 radius radius-rd
wcfg ssid 3 name ssid-wpapsk
wcfg ssid 3 security Test-wpapsk
wcfg ssid 4 name ssid-wpa2psk
wcfg ssid 4 security Test-wpa2psk
wcfg ssid save
!line starting with '!' is comment
!change to channel 8
wlan chid 8
!change operating mode -> AP mode,
!then select ssid-wep as running WLAN profile
wlan opmode 0
wlan ssidprofile ssid-wep
!change operating mode -> MBSSID mode,
!then select ssid-wpapsk, ssid-wpa2psk as running WLAN profiles
wlan opmode 3
wlan ssidprofile ssid-wpapsk ssid-wpa2psk
! set output power level to 50%
wlan output power 2
```




Legal Information

Copyright

Copyright © 2006 by ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

The contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any part or as a whole, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, translated into any language, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, photocopying, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

Published by ZyXEL Communications Corporation. All rights reserved.

Disclaimer

ZyXEL does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any products, or software described herein. Neither does it convey any license under its patent rights nor the patent rights of others. ZyXEL further reserves the right to make changes in any products described herein without notice. This publication is subject to change without notice.

Trademarks

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) is a registered trademark of ZyXEL Communications, Inc. Other trademarks mentioned in this publication are used for identification purposes only and may be properties of their respective owners.

Certifications

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Interference Statement

The device complies with Part 15 of FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operations.

This device has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This device generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy, and if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this device does cause harmful interference to radio/television reception, which can be determined by turning the device off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- 1 Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- 2 Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- 3 Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- 4 Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.



FCC Radiation Exposure Statement

- This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.
- For operation within 5.15 ~ 5.25GHz frequency range, it is restricted to indoor environment.
- IEEE 802.11b or 802.11g operation of this product in the U.S.A. is firmware-limited to channels 1 through 11.
- To comply with FCC RF exposure compliance requirements, a separation distance of at least 20 cm must be maintained between the antenna of this device and all persons.

注意！

依據 低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法

第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前項合法通信，指依電信規定作業之無線電信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

在 5250MHz~5350MHz 頻帶內操作之無線資訊傳輸設備，限於室內使用。

本機限在不干擾合法電臺與不受被干擾保障條件下於室內使用。

Notices

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device has been designed for the WLAN 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz networks throughout the EC region and Switzerland, with restrictions in France.

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

Viewing Certifications

- 1 Go to <http://www.zyxel.com>.
- 2 Select your product on the ZyXEL home page to go to that product's page.
- 3 Select the certification you wish to view from this page.

ZyXEL Limited Warranty

ZyXEL warrants to the original end user (purchaser) that this product is free from any defects in materials or workmanship for a period of up to two years from the date of purchase. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, ZyXEL will, at its discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components without charge for either parts or labor, and to whatever extent it shall deem necessary to restore the product or components to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal or higher value, and will be solely at the discretion of ZyXEL. This warranty shall not apply if the product has been modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions.

Note

Repair or replacement, as provided under this warranty, is the exclusive remedy of the purchaser. This warranty is in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, including any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular use or purpose. ZyXEL shall in no event be held liable for indirect or consequential damages of any kind to the purchaser.

To obtain the services of this warranty, contact ZyXEL's Service Center for your Return Material Authorization number (RMA). Products must be returned Postage Prepaid. It is recommended that the unit be insured when shipped. Any returned products without proof of purchase or those with an out-dated warranty will be repaired or replaced (at the discretion of ZyXEL) and the customer will be billed for parts and labor. All repaired or replaced products will be shipped by ZyXEL to the corresponding return address, Postage Paid. This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from country to country.

Registration

Register your product online to receive e-mail notices of firmware upgrades and information at www.zyxel.com for global products, or at www.us.zyxel.com for North American products.

Customer Support

Please have the following information ready when you contact customer support.

Required Information

- Product model and serial number.
- Warranty Information.
- Date that you received your device.
- Brief description of the problem and the steps you took to solve it.

Corporate Headquarters (Worldwide)

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.com.tw
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.com.tw
- Telephone: +886-3-578-3942
- Fax: +886-3-578-2439
- Web Site: www.zyxel.com, www.europe.zyxel.com
- FTP Site: [ftp.zyxel.com](ftp://ftp.zyxel.com), [ftp.europe.zyxel.com](ftp://ftp.europe.zyxel.com)
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications Corp., 6 Innovation Road II, Science Park, Hsinchu 300, Taiwan

Costa Rica

- Support E-mail: soporte@zyxel.co.cr
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.co.cr
- Telephone: +506-2017878
- Fax: +506-2015098
- Web Site: www.zyxel.co.cr
- FTP Site: [ftp.zyxel.co.cr](ftp://ftp.zyxel.co.cr)
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Costa Rica, Plaza Roble Escazú, Etapa El Patio, Tercer Piso, San José, Costa Rica

Czech Republic

- E-mail: info@cz.zyxel.com
- Telephone: +420-241-091-350
- Fax: +420-241-091-359
- Web Site: www.zyxel.cz
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications, Czech s.r.o., Modranská 621, 143 01 Praha 4 - Modrany, Česká Republika

Denmark

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.dk
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.dk
- Telephone: +45-39-55-07-00
- Fax: +45-39-55-07-07
- Web Site: www.zyxel.dk
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications A/S, Columbusvej, 2860 Soeborg, Denmark

Finland

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.fi
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.fi
- Telephone: +358-9-4780-8411
- Fax: +358-9-4780 8448
- Web Site: www.zyxel.fi
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications Oy, Malminkaari 10, 00700 Helsinki, Finland

France

- E-mail: info@zyxel.fr
- Telephone: +33-4-72-52-97-97
- Fax: +33-4-72-52-19-20
- Web Site: www.zyxel.fr
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL France, 1 rue des Vergers, Bat. 1 / C, 69760 Limonest, France

Germany

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.de
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.de
- Telephone: +49-2405-6909-0
- Fax: +49-2405-6909-99
- Web Site: www.zyxel.de
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Deutschland GmbH., Adenauerstr. 20/A2 D-52146, Wuerselen, Germany

Hungary

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.hu
- Sales E-mail: info@zyxel.hu
- Telephone: +36-1-3361649
- Fax: +36-1-3259100
- Web Site: www.zyxel.hu
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Hungary, 48, Zoldlomb Str., H-1025, Budapest, Hungary

Kazakhstan

- Support: <http://zyxel.kz/support>
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.kz

- Telephone: +7-3272-590-698
- Fax: +7-3272-590-689
- Web Site: www.zyxel.kz
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Kazakhstan, 43, Dostyk ave., Office 414, Dostyk Business Centre, 050010, Almaty, Republic of Kazakhstan

North America

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.com
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.com
- Telephone: +1-800-255-4101, +1-714-632-0882
- Fax: +1-714-632-0858
- Web Site: www.us.zyxel.com
- FTP Site: <ftp.us.zyxel.com>
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications Inc., 1130 N. Miller St., Anaheim, CA 92806-2001, U.S.A.

Norway

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.no
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.no
- Telephone: +47-22-80-61-80
- Fax: +47-22-80-61-81
- Web Site: www.zyxel.no
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications A/S, Nils Hansens vei 13, 0667 Oslo, Norway

Poland

- E-mail: info@pl.zyxel.com
- Telephone: +48 (22) 333 8250
- Fax: +48 (22) 333 8251
- Web Site: www.pl.zyxel.com
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications, ul. Okrzei 1A, 03-715 Warszawa, Poland

Russia

- Support: <http://zyxel.ru/support>
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.ru
- Telephone: +7-095-542-89-29
- Fax: +7-095-542-89-25
- Web Site: www.zyxel.ru
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Russia, Ostrovityanova 37a Str., Moscow, 117279, Russia

Spain

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.es
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.es
- Telephone: +34-902-195-420
- Fax: +34-913-005-345

- Web Site: www.zyxel.es
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications, Arte, 21 5ª planta, 28033 Madrid, Spain

Sweden

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.se
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.se
- Telephone: +46-31-744-7700
- Fax: +46-31-744-7701
- Web Site: www.zyxel.se
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications A/S, Sjöporten 4, 41764 Göteborg, Sweden

Ukraine

- Support E-mail: support@ua.zyxel.com
- Sales E-mail: sales@ua.zyxel.com
- Telephone: +380-44-247-69-78
- Fax: +380-44-494-49-32
- Web Site: www.ua.zyxel.com
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Ukraine, 13, Pimonenko Str., Kiev, 04050, Ukraine

United Kingdom

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.co.uk
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.co.uk
- Telephone: +44-1344 303044, 08707 555779 (UK only)
- Fax: +44-1344 303034
- Web Site: www.zyxel.co.uk
- FTP Site: [ftp.zyxel.co.uk](ftp://ftp.zyxel.co.uk)
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications UK, Ltd., 11 The Courtyard, Eastern Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 2XB, United Kingdom (UK)

“+” is the (prefix) number you dial to make an international telephone call.

Index

A

Access Point
 see AP
access privileges **35**
address assignment **113**
alerts **52**
alternative subnet mask notation **269**
antenna
 directional **260**
 omni-directional **260**
antenna gain **259**
AP **117, 251**
AP detection **43, 52**
applications **31**
ATC **69, 103**
ATC+WMM **103**
auto configuration **275**
auto configuration status **278**
Automatic Traffic Classifier
 see ATC

B

backup **181, 206**
Basic Service Set **67**
 see BSS
Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) **73**
BSS **35, 67, 249**

C

CA **255**
Certificate Authority
 see CA
certificates
 thumbprint algorithms **134**
 thumbprints **134**
 verifying fingerprints **134**
certifications **283**
 notices **284**
 viewing **285**

channel **251**
 interference **251**
CI commands
 valid **218**
Class of Service
 see CoS
collision **200**
command interpreter **217**
community **195**
configuration file
 examples **278**
 format **277**
 rules **277**
contact information **287**
copyright **283**
CoS **71**
CPU load **200**
CTS (Clear to Send) **252**
customer support **287**

D

defaults **182**
DHCP **202**
diagnostic **203**
diagnostic tools **199**
differentiated services **71**
DiffServ **71**
DiffServ Code Point (DSCP) **71**
DiffServ Code Points **71**
DiffServ marking rule **72**
dimensions **229**
disclaimer **283**
Distribution System **68**
DS Field **71**
DS field **71**
DSCPs **71**
dynamic WEP key exchange **255**

E

EAP [81, 82](#)
EAP authentication [254](#)
EAP-MD5 [254](#)
EAP-TLS [255](#)
EAP-TTLS [255](#)
e-mail alerts [52](#)
encryption [83, 256](#)
error log [202](#)
error/information messages
 sample [203](#)
ESS [68, 250](#)
ESS IDentification [68](#)
examples [43](#)
Extended Service Set [68, 250](#)
Extended Service Set IDentification [76, 99](#)

F

FCC interference statement [283](#)
file version [277](#)
filename conventions [205](#)
firmware file [178](#)
fragmentation threshold [252](#)
friendly AP [54, 55](#)
friendly AP list [120](#)
FTP [125, 222](#)
 restrictions [222](#)
FTP file transfer [211](#)

G

general setup [63, 191](#)
guest SSID profile [49](#)

H

hidden menus [189](#)
hidden node [251](#)
honeypot attack [118](#)
host [64](#)
humidity [229](#)
HyperTerminal [209](#)

I

IANA [274](#)
 Internet Assigned Numbers Authority
 see IANA
IBSS [249](#)
IEEE 802.1x [253](#)
in-band management [161](#)
Independent Basic Service Set [178, 249](#)
Internet access [193](#)
Internet Security Gateway [31](#)
Internet telephony [35](#)
IP Address [204](#)
IP address [53, 113, 114, 194, 202, 204](#)
IPSec VPN capability [230](#)

L

LAN [177](#)
layer 2 isolation [51](#)
LEAP [255](#)
LEDs [37](#)
link type [200](#)
log and trace [203](#)
log descriptions [154](#)
logs [151](#)

M

MAC address [53, 54, 109](#)
MAC address filter action [110](#)
MAC filter [81, 109, 230](#)
MAC service data unit [75, 79, 99](#)
main menu [189](#)
Management Information Base (MIB) [129](#)
management VLAN [161](#)
managing the device
 good habits [36](#)
 using FTP. See FTP.
 using Telnet. See command interface.
 using the command interface. See command interface.
max age [73](#)
MBSSID [35, 43, 45](#)
MSDU [75, 79, 99](#)
multiple wireless networks [43](#)

N

NAT [274](#)
 Network Address Translation
 see NAT

O

operating mode [44](#)

P

packets [200](#)
 password [64](#), [187](#), [195](#)
 path cost [73](#)
 PEAP [255](#)
 per-hop behavior [71](#), [72](#)
 ping [204](#)
 PoE [230](#)
 power output [230](#)
 PoE specifications [230](#)
 Power over Ethernet
 see PoE
 power specification [229](#)
 Pre-Shared Key
 see PSK
 priorities [69](#)
 private IP address [113](#)
 product registration [285](#)
 PSK [48](#)

Q

QoS [44](#), [103](#)
 Quick Start Guide [39](#)

R

RADIUS [48](#), [253](#)
 shared secret key [254](#)
 RADIUS message types [253](#)
 RADIUS messages [253](#)
 Rapid STP [72](#)

ras [201](#)
 rate
 receiving [200](#)
 transmitting [200](#)
 ReAuthentication Time [89](#), [90](#), [91](#), [93](#), [94](#)
 registration
 product [285](#)
 related documentation [3](#)
 remote management
 Telnet [124](#)
 remote management limitations [124](#), [222](#)
 remote management setup [220](#)
 remote node [200](#)
 required fields [189](#)
 RESET button [229](#)
 restore [181](#)
 restore configuration [210](#)
 roaming [111](#)
 requirements [112](#)
 rogue AP [43](#), [52](#), [117](#), [118](#), [119](#), [120](#), [121](#)
 rogue AP list [121](#)
 root bridge [73](#)
 RTS (Request To Send) [252](#)
 RTS threshold [251](#), [252](#)
 RTS/CTS handshake [75](#), [79](#), [99](#)

S

safety warnings [6](#)
 security [47](#), [50](#)
 security parameters [257](#)
 Service Set [76](#), [99](#)
 Service Set Identifier
 see SSID
 SMT Menu Overview [188](#)
 SNMP [128](#), [230](#)
 community [195](#)
 configuration [195](#)
 manager [129](#)
 MIBs [129](#)
 traps [130](#)
 trusted host [195](#)
 Spanning Tree Protocol [72](#)
 see STP
 SSID [35](#)
 hide SSID [81](#)
 SSID profile [35](#), [45](#), [101](#)
 pre-configured [35](#), [46](#), [49](#)
 STP [72](#), [73](#), [230](#)
 path costs [73](#)

- port states [73](#)
- terminology [73](#)
- subnet [267](#)
- subnet mask [194](#), [202](#), [268](#)
- subnetting [270](#)
- syntax conventions [4](#)
- system
 - console port speed [202](#)
 - diagnostic [203](#)
 - log and trace [202](#)
 - system information [201](#)
 - system status [199](#)
 - time and date [219](#)
- system information [200](#)
- system information and diagnosis [199](#)
- system maintenance [199](#), [201](#), [206](#), [208](#), [210](#), [213](#), [214](#), [217](#), [219](#)
- system name [63](#)
- system timeout [124](#), [222](#)

T

- tagged VLAN example [161](#)
- TCP/IP [204](#)
- Telnet [124](#)
- telnet [220](#)
- telnet configuration [220](#)
- temperature [229](#)
- testing [52](#)
- text file based auto configuration [230](#), [275](#)
- TFTP
 - restrictions [222](#)
- TFTP file transfer [213](#)
- time and date setting [219](#)
- time setting [65](#)
- time zone [220](#)
- ToS [71](#)
- trace records [202](#)
- trademarks [283](#)
- tutorial [43](#)
- Type of Service [71](#)

U

- upload firmware [210](#)
- user authentication [83](#), [257](#)

V

- Virtual Local Area Network
 - see VLAN
- VLAN [157](#)
 - configuring [158](#)
 - management VLAN [157](#)
 - RADIUS [158](#), [160](#)
 - wireless [158](#), [159](#)
- VLAN tagging [157](#)
- VoIP [35](#), [44](#), [46](#), [49](#), [103](#)

W

- warranty [285](#)
 - note [285](#)
- wcfg Command [278](#)
- WDS [76](#)
- Web [126](#)
- Web Configurator [39](#), [41](#)
- WEP [255](#)
- WEP encryption [81](#), [88](#)
- Wi-Fi Multimedia QoS [69](#)
- wireless client WPA supplicants [86](#)
- wireless LAN topologies [249](#)
- wireless security [35](#), [81](#)
- WLAN
 - interference [251](#)
 - security parameters [257](#)
- wlan command [280](#)
- WMM [103](#)
- WPA [82](#)
- WPA with RADIUS Application [84](#)
- WPA, WPA2 [256](#)
- WPA2-PSK [48](#)
- WPA-PSK [51](#)

Z

- ZyNOS [206](#)
- ZyNOS F/W Version [206](#)